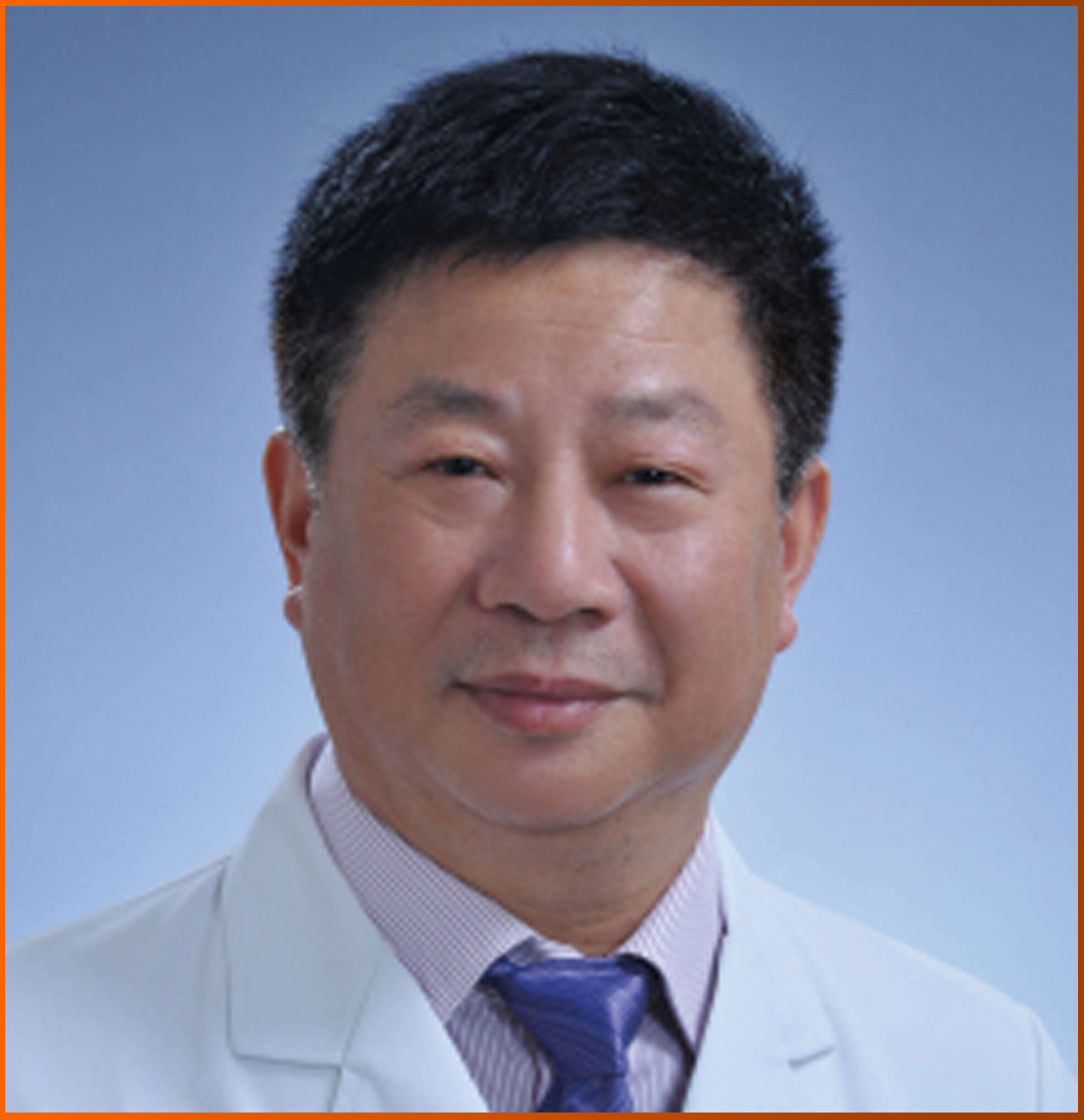
ISSN 1948-5190 (online)

World Journal of *Gastrointestinal Endoscopy*

World J Gastrointest Endosc 2015 January 16; 7(1): 1-76



Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJGE World Journal of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of gastrointestinal endoscopy

Editorial Board

2014-2017

The *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy* Editorial Board consists of 330 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in gastrointestinal endoscopy. They are from 40 countries, including Australia (3), Austria (3), Brazil (6), Canada (3), China (62), Croatia (1), Czech Republic (1), Denmark (1), Ecuador (1), Egypt (3), France (1), Germany (8), Greece (10), Hungary (2), India (11), Indonesia (1), Iran (6), Iraq (1), Ireland (2), Israel (1), Italy (37), Japan (43), Lebanon (1), Lithuania (1), Malaysia (1), Mexico (4), Netherlands (1), Norway (2), Poland (4), Portugal (5), Romania (1), Singapore (3), Slovenia (2), South Korea (19), Spain (9), Thailand (2), Turkey (11), United Arab Emirates (1), United Kingdom (14), and United States (43).

Ecuador

Carlos Robles-Medranda, *Guayaquil*

Egypt

Asmaa G Abdou, *Shebein Elkom*
Ahmed AR ElGeidie, *Mansoura*
Mohamed Abdel-Sabour Mekky, *Assiut*

France

Jean Michel Fabre, *Montpellier*

Germany

Jorg G Albert, *Frankfurt*
Hüseyin Kemal Cakmak, *Karlsruhe*
Robert Grützmann, *Dresden*
Thilo Hackert, *Heidelberg*
Arthur Hoffman, *Frankfurt*
Thomas E Langwieler, *Nordhausen*
Andreas Sieg, *Heidelberg*
Jorg Rüdiger Siewert, *Freiburg*

Greece

Sotirios C Botaitis, *Alexandroupolis*
George A Giannopoulos, *Piraeus*
Dimitris K Iakovidis, *Lamia*
Dimitrios Kapetanos, *Thessaloniki*
John A Karagiannis, *Athens*
Gregory Kouraklis, *Athens*
Spiros D Ladas, *Athens*
Theodoros E Pavlidis, *Thessaloniki*
Demitrios Vynios, *Patras*
Elias Xirouchakis, *Athens*

Hungary

László Czakó, *Szeged*
Laszlo Herszenyi, *Budapest*

India

Pradeep S Anand, *Bhopal*
Deepraj S Bhandarkar, *Mumbai*
Hemanga Kumar Bhattacharjee, *New Delhi*
Radha K Dhiman, *Chandigarh*
Mahesh K Goenka, *Kolkata*
Asish K Mukhopadhyay, *Kolkata*
Manickam Ramalingam, *Coimbatore*
Aga Syed Sameer, *Srinagar*
Omar J Shah, *Srinagar*
Shyam S Sharma, *Jaipur*
Jayashree Sood, *New Delhi*

Indonesia

Ari F Syam, *Jakarta*

Iran

Alireza Aminsharifi, *Shiraz*
Homa Davoodi, *Gorgan*
Ahad Eshraghian, *Shiraz*
Ali Reza Maleki, *Gorgan*
Yousef Rasmi, *Urmia*
Farhad Pourfarzi, *Ardabil*

Iraq

Ahmed S Abdulamir, *Baghdad*

Ireland

Ronan A Cahill, *Dublin*
Kevin C Conlon, *Dublin*

Israel

Haggi Mazeh, *Jerusalem*

Italy

Ferdinando Agresta, *Adria (RO)*
Alberto Arezzo, *Torino*
Corrado R Asteria, *Mantua*
Massimiliano Berretta, *Aviano (PN)*
Vittorio Bresadola, *udine*
Lorenzo Camellini, *Reggio Emilia*
Salvatore Maria Antonio Campo, *Rome*
Gabriele Capurso, *Rome*
Luigi Cavanna, *Piacenza*
Francesco Di Costanzo, *Firenze*
Salvatore Cucchiara, *Rome*
Paolo Declich, *Rho*
Massimiliano Fabozzi, *Aosta*
Enrico Fiori, *Rome*
Luciano Fogli, *Bologna*
Francesco Franceschi, *Rome*
Lorenzo Fuccio, *Bologna*
Giuseppe Galloro, *Naples*
Carlo M Girelli, *Busto Arsizio*
Gaetano La Greca, *Catania*
Fabrizio Guarneri, *Messina*
Giovanni Lezoche, *Ancona*
Paolo Limongelli, *Naples*
Marco M Lirici, *Rome*
Valerio Mais, *Cagliari*
Andrea Mingoli, *Rome*
Igor Monsellato, *Milan*
Marco Moschetta, *Bari*
Lucia Pacifico, *Rome*
Giovanni D De Palma, *Naples*
Paolo Del Rio, *Parma*
Pierpaolo Sileri, *Rome*
Cristiano Spada, *Rome*
Stefano Trastulli, *Terni*
Nereo Vettoretto, *Chiari (BS)*
Mario Alessandro Vitale, *Rome*
Nicola Zampieri, *Verona*

Japan

Hiroki Akamatsu, *Osaka*
Shotaro Enomoto, *Wakayama*
Masakatsu Fukuzawa, *Tokyo*
Takahisa Furuta, *Hamamatsu*
Chisato Hamashima, *Tokyo*
Naoki Hotta, *Nagoya*
Hiroshi Kashida, *Osaka-saayama*
Motohiko Kato, *Suita*
Yoshiro Kawahara, *Okayama*
Hiroto Kita, *Tokyo*
Nozomu Kobayashi, *Utsunomiya*
Shigeo Koido, *Chiba*
Koga Komatsu, *Yurihonjo*
Kazuo Konishi, *Tokyo*
Keiichiro Kume, *Kitakyushu*
Katsuhiro Mabe, *Sapporo*
Iruru Maetani, *Tokyo*
Nobuyuki Matsuhashi, *Tokyo*
Kenshi Matsumoto, *Tokyo*
Satohiro Matsumoto, *Saitama*
Hiroto Miwa, *Nishinomiya*
Naoki Muguruma, *Tokushima*
Yuji Naito, *Kyoto*
Noriko Nakajima, *Tokyo*
Katsuhiko Nosho, *Sapporo*
Satoshi Ogiso, *Kyoto*
Keiji Ogura, *Tokyo*
Shiro Oka, *Hiroshima*
Hiroyuki Okada, *Okayama*
Yasushi Sano, *Kobe*
Atsushi Sofuni, *Tokyo*
Hiromichi Sonoda, *Otsu*
Haruhisa Suzuki, *Tokyo*
Gen Tohda, *Fukui*
Yosuke Tsuji, *Tokyo*
Toshio Uraoka, *Tokyo*
Hiroyuki Yamamoto, *Kawasaki*
Shuji Yamamoto, *Shiga*
Kenjiro Yasuda, *Kyoto*
Naohisa Yoshida, *Kyoto*
Shuhei Yoshida, *Chiba*
Hitoshi Yoshiji, *Kashihara*

Lebanon

Eddie K Abdalla, *Beirut*

Lithuania

Laimas Jonaitis, *Kaunas*

Malaysia

Sreenivasan Sasidharan, *Minden*

Mexico

Quintín H Gonzalez-Contreras, *Mexico*
Carmen Maldonado-Bernal, *Mexico*
Jose M Remes-Troche, *Veracruz*
Mario A Riquelme, *Monterrey*

Netherlands

Marco J Bruno, *Rotterdam*

Norway

Airazat M Kazaryan, *Skien*
Thomas de Lange, *Rud*

Poland

Thomas Brzozowski, *Cracow*
Piotr Pierzchalski, *Krakow*
Stanislaw Sulkowski, *Bialystok*
Andrzej Szkaradkiewicz, *Poznań*

Portugal

Andreia Albuquerque, *Porto*
Pedro N Figueiredo, *Coimbra*
Ana Isabel Lopes, *Lisbon*
Rui A Silva, *Porto*
Filipa F Vale, *Lisbon*

Romania

Lucian Negreanu, *Bucharest*

Singapore

Surendra Mantoo, *Singapore*
Francis Seow-Choen, *Singapore*
Kok-Yang Tan, *Singapore*

Slovenia

Pavel Skok, *Maribor*
Bojan Tepes, *Rogaska Slatina*

South Korea

Seung Hyuk Baik, *Seoul*
Joo Young Cho, *Seoul*
Young-Seok Cho, *Uijeongbu*
Ho-Seong Han, *Seoul*
Hye S Han, *Seoul*
Seong Woo Jeon, *Daegu*
Won Joong Jeon, *Jeju*
Min Kyu Jung, Daegu
Gwang Ha Kim, *Busan*
Song Cheol Kim, *Seoul*
Tae Il Kim, *Seoul*
Young Ho Kim, Daegu
Hyung-Sik Lee, *Busan*
Kil Yeon Lee, *Seoul*
SangKil Lee, *Seoul*
Jong-Baeck Lim, *Seoul*
Do Youn Park, *Busan*
Dong Kyun Park, *Incheon*
Jaekyu Sung, *Daejeon*

Spain

Sergi Castellvi-Bel, *Barcelona*
Angel Cuadrado-Garcia, *Sanse*
Alfredo J Lucendo, *Tomelloso*
José F Noguera, *Valencia*
Enrique Quintero, *Tenerife*
Luis Rabago, *Madrid*
Eduardo Redondo-Cerezo, *Granada*
Juan J Vila, *Pamplona*

Thailand

Somchai Amornyotin, *Bangkok*
Pradermchai Kongkam, *Pathumwan*

Turkey

Ziya Anadol, *Ankara*
Cemil Bilir, *Rize*
Ertan Bulbuloglu, *Kahramanmaras*
Vedat Goral, *Izmir*
Alp Gurkan, *Istanbul*
Serkan Kahyaoglu, *Ankara*
Erdinc Kamer, *Izmir*
Cuneyt Kayaalp, *Malatya*
Erdal Kurtoglu, *Turkey*
Oner Mentes, *Ankara*
Orhan V Ozkan, *Sakarya*

United Arab Emirates

Maher A Abbas, *Abu Dhabi*

United Kingdom

Nadeem A Afzal, *Southampton*
Emad H Aly, *Aberdeen*
Gianpiero Gravante, *Leicester*
Karim Mukhtar, *Liverpool*
Samir Pathak, *East Yorkshire*
Jayesh Sagar, *Frimley*
Muhammad S Sajid, *Worthing, West Sussex*
Sanchoy Sarkar, *Liverpool*
Audun S Sigurdsson, *Telford*
Tony CK Tham, *Belfast*
Kym Thorne, *Swansea*
Her Hsin Tsai, *Hull*
Edward Tudor, *Taunton*
Weiguang Wang, *Wolverhampton*

United States

Emmanuel Atta Agaba, *Bronx*
Mohammad Alsolaiman, *Lehi*
Erman Aytac, *Cleveland*
Jodie A Barkin, *Miami*
Corey E Basch, *Wayne*
Charles Bellows, *albuquerque*
Jianyuan Chai, *Long Beach*
Edward J Ciaccio, *New York*
Konstantinos Economopoulos, *Boston*
Viktor E Eysselein, *Torrance*
Michael R Hamblin, *Boston*
Shantel Hebert-Magee, *Orlando*
Cheryl L Holt, *College Park*
Timothy D Kane, *Washington*
Matthew Kroh, *Cleveland*
I Michael Leitman, *New York*
Wanguo Liu, *New Orleans*
Charles Maltz, *New York*
Robert CG Martin, *Louisville*
Hiroshi Mashimo, *West Roxbury*
Abraham Mathew, *Hershey*
Amosy E M'Koma, *Nashville*
Klaus Monkemuller, *Birmingham*
James M Mullin, *Wynnewood*
Farr Reza Nezhat, *New York*
Gelu Osian, *Baltimore*
Eric M Pauli, *Hershey*
Srinivas R Puli, *Peoria*
Isaac Raijman, *Houston*
Robert J Richards, *Stony Brook*
William S Richardson, *New Orleans*
Bryan K Richmond, *Charleston*
Praveen K Roy, *Marshfield*
Rodrigo Ruano, *Houston*
Danny Sherwinter, *Brooklyn*
Bronislaw L Slomiany, *Newark*
Aijaz Sofi, *Toledo*
Stanislaw P Stawicki, *Columbus*
Nicholas Stylopoulos, *Boston*
XiangLin Tan, *New Brunswick*
Wahid Wassef, *Worcester*
Nathaniel S Winstead, *Houma*

WJGE

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy

Contents

Monthly Volume 7 Number 1 January 16, 2015

Contents

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy
Volume 7 Number 1 January 16, 2015

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy

ISSN
ISSN 1948-5190 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
October 15, 2009

FREQUENCY
Monthly

Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
January 16, 2015

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.1

World J Gastrointest Endosc 2015 January 16; 7(1): 1-12
ISSN 1948-5190 (online)

REVIEW

Role of endoscopy in management of gastrointestinal complications of portal hypertension

Carmelo Luigiano, Giuseppe Iabichino, Antonino Judica, Clara Virgilio, Valentina Peta, Ludovico Abenavoli

Carmelo Luigiano, Clara Virgilio, Unit of Gastroenterology and Digestive Endoscopy, ARNAS Garibaldi, 95122 Catania, Italy
Giuseppe Iabichino, Antongiulio Judica, Postgraduate School of Gastroenterology, University of Catania, 95122 Catania, Italy
Valentina Peta, Ludovico Abenavoli, Department of Health Science, University Magna Græcia, 88100 Catanzaro, Italy
Author contributions: Luigiano C and Abenavoli L designed research, edited and finalized the text; Iabichino G and Judica A performed literature search, analyzed the data and wrote the text; Virgilio C and Peta V reviewed the paper for important intellectual content.

Correspondence to: Ludovico Abenavoli, MD, PhD, Department of Health Sciences, University Magna Graecia, Campus Germaneto, Viale Europa, 88100 Catanzaro, Italy. l.abenavoli@unicz.it
Telephone: +39-0961-3694387
Fax: +39-0961-754220
Received: August 13, 2014
Peer-review started: August 13, 2014
First decision: September 16, 2014
Revised: October 30, 2014
Accepted: November 17, 2014
Article in press: November 19, 2014
Published online: January 16, 2015

Abstract

The management of patients with gastrointestinal complications of portal hypertension is often complex and challenging. The endoscopy plays an important role in the management of these patients. The role of endoscopy is both diagnostic and interventional and in the last years the techniques have undergone a rapid expansion with the advent of different and novel endoscopic modalities, with consequent improvement of investigation and treatment of these patients. The choice of best therapeutic strategy depends on many factors: baseline disease, patient's clinical performance and the timing when it is done if in emergency or a prophylactic approaches. In this review we evaluate the endoscopic management of patients with the gastrointestinal complications of portal hypertension.

Key words: Portal hypertension; Gastrointestinal complications; Bleeding; Esophageal varices; Gastric varices

Core tip: Endoscopy plays a primary role in the staging, diagnosis and treatment of gastrointestinal complications of portal hypertension. In this review, we summarize data from randomized clinical trials or prospective studies together with meta-analytical data, when applicable, to present the most updated recommendations on endoscopic management of the gastrointestinal complications of portal hypertension.

Luigiano C, Iabichino G, Judica A, Virgilio C, Peta V, Abenavoli L. Role of endoscopy in management of gastrointestinal complications of portal hypertension. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; 7(1): 1-12 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5190/full/v7/i1/1.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.1

INTRODUCTION

Portal hypertension is defined as a pathologic increase in portal vein to inferior vena cava pressure gradient greater than 5 mmHg. According to anatomic location,

the diseases causing portal hypertension are classified as pre-hepatic if involve portal, splenic or mesenteric veins, intra-hepatic if cause acute or chronic liver diseases, and post-hepatic if interfere with the venous outflow of the liver. The most prevalent cause of portal hypertension is liver cirrhosis with greater resistance to portal flow. Hepatic venous pressure gradient (HVPG) is an indirect measurement of portal hypertension which is obtained by placing a catheter in the hepatic vein or by occluding a large branch of hepatic vein by inflating a balloon. Portal hypertension likely causes the development of varices and hemodynamic and mucosal changes in the entire gastrointestinal (GI) tract. Varices are present in the 50% of cirrhotic patients[1-4]. Bleeding occurs in approximately 5%-15% of patients, depends on the size of varices. Other predictors of bleeding may be the presence of red wale mark and decompensated cirrhosis[5]. The variceal bleeding mortality is around 20% at 6 wk despite improvement in therapy over the last decade thanks to the development of endoscopical and pharmacological therapies and antibiotic prophylaxis[6-8].

In the patients with portal hypertension the gut mucosa undergoes microcirculatory changes, such as submucosal angiogenesis and vascular ectasia, that impair its integrity and promote its susceptibility to damage. Stomach changes can cause bleeding [portal hypertensive gastropathy (PHG)], usually the involvement of small bowel is asymptomatic (portal hypertensive enteropathy), but sometimes can cause occult blood loss, finally colon involvement (portal hypertensive colopathy) is often associated with bleeding and the symptoms are similar to inflammatory bowel disease[9].

The aim of this paper is to review the interventional and diagnostic role of endoscopy in patients with GI complications of portal hypertension.

ESOPHAGEAL VARICES

Primary prophylaxis

The goal of primary prophylaxis is to prevent first bleeding episode and consequently improve survival through decreasing bleeding-related death. All cirrhotic patients should be screened for varices through endoscopy to detect the patients that need a prophylactic treatment[10,11]. The Child-Pugh (C-P) score suggests that risk factors of bleeding are the presence of red wale marks, the size of varices and the liver disease severity[5].

Typically, one of two approaches is used for primary prophylaxis: pharmacologic prophylaxis using a non-selective beta-adrenergic blockers (NSBBs) or with endoscopic band ligation (EBL).

EBL consists in the placement of rubber rings on variceal columns which are sucked into a plastic hollow cylinder attached to the tip of the endoscope. Endoscopic ligation causes occlusion of the varix and then thrombosis with ischemic necrosis of the mucosa. Multiple-shot devices have largely replaced the original single-shot ligators, since the procedure is much simpler and faster with multi shot devices. Endoscopic variceal ligation is associated with complications such as hemorrhage, chest pain, dysphagia, and odynophagia and ulceration of the mucosa. There are only few studies that have evaluated the risk of bleeding from ligation-induced ulcers. Schepke *et al*[12] found that the incidence of bleeding from ligation ulcers after EBL was 6.7%. Another retrospective data analysis of EBL described hemorrhage from ligation ulcers as 5.7%, irrespective of the indication[13]. Endoscopic variceal ligation sessions are usually repeated at 1-2 wk intervals until complete obliteration[11]. A randomized, controlled trial of bimonthly *vs* biweekly EBL (primary and secondary prophylaxis) found that EBL bimonthly had a higher total eradication rate, lower recurrence rate, and lower rate of additional treatment than biweekly EBL and that the patients treated bi-monthly showed better ulceration healing in the second and third treatments than the patients treated bi-weekly[14]. This approach may decrease the risk of bleeding or perforation.

NSBBs can be used in patients that present cirrhosis, small varices and risk of bleeding according to C-P score[10,11]. It's known that patients with small varices with red signs on its wall or with C-P score class C, have the same risk of bleeding of patients with large varices[5]. In patients with medium/large varices either NSBBs or EBL are an appropriate choice for primary prophylaxis of bleeding[10,11]. A systematic review of 11 randomized controlled trials (RCTs) about prevention of variceal hemorrhage,has compared NSBBs with placebo or non active treatment, and has shown a 9% absolute risk reduction of first variceal bleeding at two years[15]. A significant reduction in mortality was also seen with NSBBs use[16]. The use of NSBBs is limited by their side-effect profile, which includes hypotension, fatigue, lethargy, depression, and dyspnea in patients with associated pulmonary disease. Around 15%-20% of patients suffer from intolerable side effects that require discontinuation of the drug[17].

A meta-analysis of 5 trials comparing prophylactic EBL with controls found that EBL decreases the risk of variceal hemorrhage and the mortality related to hemorrhage[18]. The treatment choice is based on patient preference, local resources and side effects[10]. A Cochrane meta-analysis that included 19 RCTs, has compared prophylactic EBL with NSBBs and has shown a slight beneficial effect for EBL, without different bleeding-related mortality in the two arms[19].

Evolving data suggest novel uses for endoscopic ultrasonography (EUS) in patients with esophageal varices, in fact a RCT has shown that in the treatment of esophageal varices EUS-guided injection sclerotherapy is most safe and efficacious respect to endoscopic injection therapy[20].

In patients treated with NSBBs endoscopic follow-up isn't necessary, conversely in patients treated with EBL, is necessary repeat endoscopy every one or two

weeks until obliteration, 1-3 mo after obliteration and finally every year to check for variceal recurrence[11]. In patients with small varices and who not receive NSBBs, is necessary repeat endoscopy in two years. In the case of hepatic decompensation, endoscopy should be repeated every year and in cirrhotic patients without the presence of varices on the initial endoscopy it should be repeated every three years[10,11].

Acute variceal bleeding

Ruptured esophageal varices cause 70% of all upper GI bleeding episodes in patients with portal hypertension. Therefore, a variceal origin should be suspected in any cirrhotic patient that presents a GI bleeding[7]. In patients with hematemesis or hemodynamic instability, an endoscopic evaluation should be done in the first 12 h after admission[10,11].

The use of new drugs, which are able to decrease portal pressure, the novel and specialized endoscopic endoscopic therapy, the use of antibiotics and the interventional radiologic procedures improved the survival in the last 25 years[6]. Mortality during the bleeding episode remains high and ranges from 24% in unselected cirrhotic variceal bleeders to about 16% among those receiving the current standard of care (band ligation + vasoactive drugs + antibiotics)[21-23]. For the treatment of acute bleeding related to variceal the current recommendation is to combine antibiotic prophylaxis, hemodynamic stabilization, the use of drugs and the treatment through endoscopy[11]. It's important maintaining hemodynamic stability and a hemoglobin of 8 g/dL[11]. The restitution of lost blood causes an increasing in portal pressure to levels higher respect to baseline[24]. A recently RCT showed that a restrictive transfusion strategy in patients with portal hypertensive bleeding reduced further bleeding, need for rescue therapy and length of stay in the hospital. In the restrictive-strategy group the hemoglobin threshold for transfusion was 7 g/dL per deciliter with a target range of 7 to 9 g/dL per deciliter[25]. Antibiotic prophylaxis is a standard practice, in fact it is known that is able to decrease the rate of bacteria infections and the incidence of rebleeding, and increase the survival[26,27]. The combination of endoscopic and pharmacological therapy is the most common approach for treatment of acute variceal bleeding[10,11]. For example a meta-analysis of 8 RCTs has shown that vasoactive drugs enhance the efficacy of endoscopic therapy respect to endoscopic therapy alone, without evidence of side effects or mortality[28].

EBL is the best endoscopic therapy for active bleeding because respect to endoscopic sclerotherapy (ES), allows a greater control of bleeding, the possible adverse events are lower and improves the survival[10,29,30]. When EBL is not technically feasible, endoscopic sclerotherapy is recommended[10]. Endoscopic ultrasound allows a more effective distribution of sclerosant, the injection of sclerosant agents can be realized into esophageal varices, and causes a decrease of the recurrence rate[31].

Emergency injection of acrylate glue could be also an effective method for treat the bleeding of esophageal varices[32]. Vaso-active medications decrease portal blood flow which relate closely to variceal pressure and include vasopressine, somatostatin, and their analogs (terlipressin and octreotide, respectively). Vasoactive therapy should be continued for 5 d to prevent the rebleeding[10], the reason behind this treatment is that a higher portal pressure is associated with a prognosis less favorable[33].

Patients with cirrhosis in Child-Pugh class C or those in class B who have persistent bleeding at endoscopy, are at high risk for treatment failure and a poor prognosis and early use of PTFE-covered TIPS (within 72 h) markedly and significantly reduces failures to control bleeding or rebleeding and improves survival[34].

Secondary prophylaxis

Over 70% of patients experience recurrent variceal bleeding within one year of their index bleed[35,36]. To prevent recurrent bleeding all surviving patients should receive prophylactic treatments[11]. Available treatments for preventing variceal rebleeding include pharmacological therapy, endoscopic therapy, transjugular intra-hepatic porto-systemic shunt (TIPS) and surgical shunting. A recently meta-analysis showed that NSBBs and EBL are similarly able to reduce upper GI bleeding, variceal rebleeding and bleeding-related mortality, but the overall mortality rate was only lowered with NSBBs[37]. The beneficial effect of b-blockers goes beyond the reduction in the variceal bleeding risk and is probably related to an improvement of other complications of portal hypertension.

A combination of NSBBs and endoscopic therapy is the currently recommended first line treatment for the prevention of variceal rebleeding[10,11]. Band ligation is the endoscopic therapy of choice and has replaced injection sclerotherapy because it is safer and more effective[38]. EBL should be repeated every 1-2 wk until obliteration, the first surveillance endoscopy is performed 1-3 mo after obliteration and then every 6-12 mo to check for variceal recurrence and NSBBs should be adjusted to the maximal tolerated dose[10,11].

Recently, a meta-analysis of 9 trials has confirmed that the combination of EBL and drug treatment reduces the risk of overall and variceal rebleeding, but not overall mortality, when compared with b-blockers or EBL alone[39]. However, data evaluating this issue are not very strong. Lo and de la Pena, have shown that adding b-blockers to EBL reduces the risk of rebleeding and variceal recurrence but this effect was not confirmed in a third study[40-42]. Another two trials failed to show a clear-cut benefit from adding EBL to combined pharmacological therapy with nadolol plus isosorbide mononitrate[43,44].

In cirrhotic patients that are unable or that refuse EBL, NSBBs is a valid option, in fact causes a reduction in portal pressure and a slight increase of side effects[11,45].

TIPS should be considered in patients who are Child A or B who experience recurrent variceal hemorrhage despite combination pharmacological and endoscopic therapy[10,11]. The use of polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE)-covered stents significantly decreased the rates of obstruction and re-intervention[46]. Surgical shunt prevents rebleeding but markedly increases the risk of hepatic encephalopathy[47].

Rescue therapy

In about 10% of patients, despite urgent endoscopic, variceal bleeding cannot be controlled and thus they may be candidates for salvage therapy[11]. A TIPS is suggested in patients with uncontrolled hemorrhage from esophageal varices with bleeding recurs[11,48-50]. Balloon tamponade (BT) is a temporary measure in patients with uncontrollable bleeding[10]. The main complications associated with BT include aspiration pneumonia in unventilated patients, esophageal ulcers, esophageal tears and airway obstruction with fatal complications in 6%-20% of cases[50].

Fully covered self-expanding metal stent (FCSEMS) placement have been recently proposed as rescue therapy[51], their use allow the stabilization of the patients until is performed the definitive therapy. Preliminary studies showed an high success rate, with minor complications[51-54]. Recently the hemostatic powder TC-325 was used as rescue therapy with good results[55].

GASTRIC VARICES

Seventeen percent of patients with hepatic cirrhosis are affected by gastric varices (GV)[56]. Gastric varices are classified according their location in: esophago-gastric varices, *i.e.*, esophageal varices extending either from the gastroesophageal junction to the small curvature of the stomach (GOV1), or to the fundus (GOV2); and isolated gastric varices (IGV), located in the stomach (IGV2) or elsewhere in the fundus (IGV1); GOV1 represent 75% of GV, GOV2, IVG1 and IGV2 represent respectively 21%, 1% and 4% of GV[57]. GOV1 constitute an extension of esophageal varices[10]. GV bleed less frequently than esophageal varices and with a reported incidence of bleeding of about 25% in 2 years. Fundal varices, however, had a significantly higher bleeding incidence (78% for IGV1 and 55% for GOV2), than GOV1 and IGV2 (10%)[56]. Risk factors for GV bleeding include red color spots, larger nodular GV, fundal location and an advanced Child-Pugh class[56,58].

Primary prophylaxis

Little data have been reported about the primary prophylaxis of GV bleeding. Recently a RCT has compared the injection of cyanoacrylate glue with NSBBs in primary prophylaxis of GV bleeding and showed that cyanoacrylate therapy is more efficacious than NSBBs in preventing gastric variceal bleeding[59].

Acute variceal bleeding

Gastric varices bleeding is less frequent, but more severe than esophageal varices bleeding, therefore it can be more challenging to treat. The management of acute GV bleeding is similarly to the management of esophageal varices bleeding, and include antibiotic prophylaxis, management of euvolemic status and early use of vasoactive drugs[10,11]. The use of cyanoacrylate glue injection resulted in an high percentage of success (*i.e.*, bleeding cessation)[60]. A small RCTs compared cyanoacrylate glue injection with EBL and ES and showed that cyanoacrylate injection is as effective as (or more than) ligation in acute bleeding[61,62]. Leaking of glue (4.4%), sepsis (1.3%), systemic embolism (2%-3%) represent the more common complications related to this treatment[63,64].

A new technique of treatment was introduced in last years, EUS-guided therapy of gastric fundal varices with a combination of cyanoacrylate glue and coil injection that reduced the risk of glue embolization. Coils act as a scaffold to sustain the cyanoacrylate glue within the varix and decrease the amount of glue injection. In a retrospective cohort study this technique was successful in all patients without procedure-related complications[65]. A recently study that compared the treatment of GV by using EUS-guided cyanoacrylate injection or EUS-guided coil application showed that both techniques are effective in the obliteration of localized GV. EUS-guided coil required fewer endoscopies and tended to have fewer adverse events compared with EUS-guided cyanoacrylate injection[66].

TIPS is considered in patients with hemorrhage from fundal varices that can't be controlled or with bleeding that recurs despite the therapy[11]. Fibrin sealant (a solution of fibrinogen and thrombin) has been injected for arrest of variceal bleeding in small uncontrolled series[67,68]. Thrombin has been evaluated for use in endoscopic hemostasis of variceal bleeding. In 2 retrospective studies, thrombin achieved hemostasis in bleeding gastric varices in 75% to 94%[69,70].

Secondary prophylaxis

Cyanoacrylate injection is the most frequent treatment for secondary prophylaxis of GV[10]. Rebleeding rates after an acute GV bleeding episode treated with tissue adhesives range from 7%-65%[71]. After initial hemostasis with tissue adhesives, repeated sessions are performed from two to four weeks until is achieved the endoscopic obliteration. Two RCTs compared cyanoacrylate injection with variceal band ligation, showing that cyanoacrylate injection reduced the rebleeding rates[61,62]. Another study compared cyanoacrylate injection with sclerotherapy and showed a greater control of initial hemostasis and a lower rebleeding rates with cyanoacrylate[72]. TIPS is considered when patients show hemorrhage that can not be controlled or in whom bleeding recurs[11,73].

PHG

The prevalence of PHG, in patients with severe liver disease, ranges between the 11% and 80% and is a potential cause of bleeding[74]. PHG is classified as mild when the only change consists of a snakeskin mosaic pattern, and it is classified as severe when in addition to the mosaic pattern, flat or bulging red or black-brown spots are seen, and/or when there is active hemorrhage[75]. Acute bleeding from PHG is a rare event, with an incidence less than 3%, the incidence of chronic bleeding is around 10%-15%[76]. At the current time, there is not enough data to recommend primary prophylaxis of bleeding from PHG in cirrhotic patients[77].

In the case of acute haemorrhage are administered vasoactive drugs such as vasopressin and its analogue and terlipressin, this drugs are able to control haemorrhage[78-80]. In rare cases, the medical therapy is unable to control bleeding and in this cases limited data suggests the endoscopic thermal therapy[81]. Moreover TIPS is employed in the treatment of PHG with improvement of both mild and severe forms and reduction in endoscopic severity as well as transfusion requirement[82]. Recently haemostatic powder (Hemospray) has been evaluated in patients with acute bleeding due to PHG. This haemostatic powder, which acts by forming a barrier over them bleeding site and enhancing the concentration of clotting factors, was successfully used in four patients actively bleeding from PHG[83]. In patients who have previously experienced clinically significant GI blood loss, NSBBs should be used for prevention of recurrent bleeding[10].

GASTRIC ANTRAL VASCULAR ECTASIA

Gastric antral vascular ectasia (GAVE) is a disorder of the stomach that is characterized by the presence of dilated and fragile blood vessels. In patients with cirrhosis GAVE is less detected compared to PHG[84,85]. There are 2 types of GAVE based on distinctive endoscopic appearances. The classic manifestation consists of appearance of multiple flat, linear, erythematous strips of ectatic vessels radiating from the pylorus to the antrum. The second type is punctate, with punctate red spots scattered throughout the antrum and tends to be more associated with liver cirrhosis[86]. It is reasonable to not treat GAVE lesions that are asymptomatic[77]. Neodymium-yttrium-aluminum garnet laser coagulation is used to control GAVE-related bleeding, in fact is able to reduce the need of blood transfusions in 50%-80% of cases. The disadvantages of this technique are the high cost and the need of a long training period[87-89].

Argon plasma coagulation (APC) is a thermoablative method, which produces thermal coagulation by the use of electric current with high frequency that is passed through with argon gas without contact with the mucosa. APC treatment have an efficacy ranging from 90% to 100%, without the need of blood transfusions with an increase of hemoglobin level in most patients[90,91]. The most frequently complication of APC treatment is the intestinal gas distension, more serious adverse events are antral stenosis and upper GI hemorrhage[91]. Argon plasma coagulation is frequently associated with recurrence of bleeding in 30%-60% of cases, in the medium to long term period[91,92]. The use of EBL has been recently demonstrated for GAVE treatment[93].

EBL may more reliably obliterate vascular structures in the deep mucosa and submucosa, thus reducing the need for further treatments. Ligation bands are applied to abnormal-appearing mucosa in the antrum. First is treated the distal antrum, after the ligation bands are applied more proximally until most of the abnormal mucosa is treated. Wells *et al*[93], in a retrospective study, found that EBL reduced recurrent bleeding and required less treatment sessions and hospital admissions compared to APC treatment[93]. This finding is in accordance with other two studies[94,95].

Recently studies examined the use of radiofrequency ablation (RFA) for the treatment of GAVE[96,97]. These two studies suggests that endoscopic mucosal ablation by using the RFA with HALO system is a viable option for the treatment of chronic bleeding related to GAVE[96,97]. Additional therapy for GAVE includes cryotherapy, cyanoacrylate spray and surgical antrectomy[98-101].

ECTOPIC VARICES

Ectopic varices are those varices which are not located in the gastro-esophageal area, are less common and occur in different sites, such as in the jejunum or ileum (18%),in the duodenum (17%) or in the colon (14%), in the rectum (8%), and finally in the peritoneum (9%)[102,103].

Duodenal varices

Duodenal varices (DV) were reported to be the second cause of ectopic variceal bleeding after the rectal location[104]. They are most commonly noted in the duodenal bulb followed by the second part of the duodenum[102,104]. Bleeding due to DV is usually massive, with a mortality rate around the 40% at the first episode[105,106]. Different sclerosant agents are used for endoscopic injection therapy, for example Seo *et al*[107] have been shown how bleeding duodenal varices can be eradicated with injection of ethanolamine. Liu *et al*[106] in a five-year retrospective study reported the successful treatment with cyanoacrylate injection in 4 patients with bleeding due to DV. Some authors have reported also the successful EBL of DV bleeding[108-110]. If rebleeding occur after endoscopic therapy, and TIPS are used as rescue therapy with good results[111,112].

Small-bowel varices

An uncommon, difficult to treat and sometimes fatal manifestation of portal hypertension is the hemorrhage associated with small-bowel varices. In fact, 8.1% of patients with portal hypertension who underwent to capsule endoscopy present small-bowel varices[113]. When

the terminal ileum is intubated on colonoscopy the 18% of patients with portal hypertension, present terminal ileal varices[114]. Double-balloon enteroscopy (DBE) allows to display whole small bowel and perform endoscopic surgeries in patients with bleeding small-bowel varices. Enteroscopic and colonscopic sclerotherapy of jejunal and ileal varices has been described[115-118]. TIPS is the first line treatment for refractory variceal bleeding[119].

Colonic varices

The most common sites of colonic varices are the rectum and cecum[105]. The rate of colonic variceal bleeding in liver cirrhosis is approximately 1%-8%[120]. Several interventional therapies like endoscopic variceal ligation, glue injection, TIPS, BRTO, colonic resection have been reported[121-126].

Rectal varices

Rectal varices are one of the most important causes of bleeding in portal hypertension, they occur in 44% to 89% of cirrhosis[127-129]. The endoscopic options for treatment of rectal varices are injection therapies using sclerosants or cyanoacrylate glue and band ligation[130-133]. Recently EUS-guided approach has been used in management of rectal varices. The advantages to use EUS-guided therapy are different and include the ability to treat directly the varix and visualize deeper collateral vessels. The EUS-guided therapy with sclerosant or coil embolization showed good results[134-136].

PORTAL HYPERTENSIVE BILIOPATHY

Portal hypertensive biliopathy (PHB) is an abnormalities of all biliary tract including intra-hepatic and extra-hepatic bile ducts, cystic duct and gallbladder. The frequency of PHB in patients with extra-hepatic portal venous obstruction (EHPVO), is greater respect to patients with cirrhosis[137]. EUS could be useful in patients with cirrhosis to identify CBD varices or bile duct stones[138].

The extraction of CBD stones by endoscopic sphincterotomy is the normally treatment applied in patients with CBD stones. Endoscopic treatment is the best treatment for patients with dominant biliary stricture, but without a shuntable vein. Porto-systemic shunt is performed in patients with dominant biliary strictures with a shuntable vein[139,140].

PORTAL HYPERTENSIVE ENTEROPATHY

Portal hypertensive enteropathy (PHE) is defined as the presence of several red spots like arterovenous malformations, patchy hyperemia of the mucosa, diffuse mucosal edema, spontaneous bleeding from the mucosa or small bowel varices[141-143]. Due to the difficult access to the small bowel, in the past the diagnosis of PHE was very difficult, but with the introduction of capsule endoscopy and DBE, PHE seems more common and has been seen that in cirrhotic patients may cause chronic GI bleeding with portal hypertension[144,145]. PHG is mostly asymptomatic, although it may bleed acutely leading to hematemesis and/or melena.

PORTAL HYPERTENSIVE COLOPATHY

Portal hypertensive colopathy (PHC) is characterized by erythema of the colonic mucosa and vascular lesions including telangiectasias, cherry-red spots and angiodysplasia-like lesions. The prevalence of PHC in patients with cirrhosis ranging between 25%-70%[146-148]. Portal hypertension seems to play an important role, and there is an association with a hyperkinetic circulatory state[149]. Lower GI bleeding due to PHC is estimated up to 9%[150-152]. In patients with chronic lower GI bleeding secondary to PHC, as reported the treatment with NSBBs is effective[153]. In patients with acute bleeding, vasoactive medications, such as octreotide or terlipressin, could be effective[153]. TIPS has been used as a rescue therapy in patients with refractory GI bleeding[154].

REFERENCES

1 **Garcia-Tsao G**, Groszmann RJ, Fisher RL, Conn HO, Atterbury CE, Glickman M. Portal pressure, presence of gastroesophageal varices and variceal bleeding. *Hepatology* 1985; **5**: 419-424 [PMID: 3873388 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840050313]

2 **Groszmann RJ**, Bosch J, Grace ND, Conn HO, Garcia-Tsao G, Navasa M, Alberts J, Rodes J, Fischer R, Bermann M. Hemodynamic events in a prospective randomized trial of propranolol versus placebo in the prevention of a first variceal hemorrhage. *Gastroenterology* 1990; **99**: 1401-1407 [PMID: 2210246]

3 **Casado M**, Bosch J, García-Pagán JC, Bru C, Bañares R, Bandi JC, Escorsell A, Rodríguez-Láiz JM, Gilabert R, Feu F, Schorlemer C, Echenagusia A, Rodés J. Clinical events after transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt: correlation with hemodynamic findings. *Gastroenterology* 1998; **114**: 1296-1303 [PMID: 9609767]

4 **D'Amico G**, Garcia-Tsao G, Pagliaro L. Natural history and prognostic indicators of survival in cirrhosis: a systematic review of 118 studies. *J Hepatol* 2006; **44**: 217-231 [PMID: 16298014 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2005.10.013]

5 **North Italian Endoscopic Club for the Study and Treatment of Esophageal Varices**. Prediction of the first variceal hemorrhage in patients with cirrhosis of the liver and esophageal varices. A prospective multicenter study. *N Engl J Med* 1988; **319**: 983-989 [PMID: 3262200 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM198810133191505]

6 **Carbonell N**, Pauwels A, Serfaty L, Fourdan O, Lévy VG, Poupon R. Improved survival after variceal bleeding in patients with cirrhosis over the past two decades. *Hepatology* 2004; **40**: 652-659 [PMID: 15349904 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20339]

7 **D'Amico G**, De Franchis R. Upper digestive bleeding in cirrhosis. Post-therapeutic outcome and prognostic indicators. *Hepatology* 2003; **38**: 599-612 [PMID: 12939586 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2003.50385]

8 **Bernard B**, Grangé JD, Khac EN, Amiot X, Opolon P, Poynard T. Antibiotic prophylaxis for the prevention of bacterial infections in cirrhotic patients with gastrointestinal bleeding: a meta-analysis. *Hepatology* 1999; **29**: 1655-1661 [PMID: 10347104 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510290608]

9 **Urrunaga NH**, Rockey DC. Portal hypertensive gastropathy

and colopathy. *Clin Liver Dis* 2014; **18**: 389-406 [PMID: 24679502 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2014.01.008]
10 **de Franchis R**. Revising consensus in portal hypertension: report of the Baveno V consensus workshop on methodology of diagnosis and therapy in portal hypertension. *J Hepatol* 2010; **53**: 762-768 [PMID: 20638742 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.06.004]
11 **Garcia-Tsao G**, Sanyal AJ, Grace ND, Carey W. Prevention and management of gastroesophageal varices and variceal hemorrhage in cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2007; **46**: 922-938 [PMID: 17879356 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21907]
12 **Schepke M**, Kleber G, Nürnberg D, Willert J, Koch L, Veltzke-Schlieker W, Hellerbrand C, Kuth J, Schanz S, Kahl S, Fleig WE, Sauerbruch T. Ligation versus propranolol for the primary prophylaxis of variceal bleeding in cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2004; **40**: 65-72 [PMID: 15239087 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20284]
13 **Schmitz RJ**, Sharma P, Badr AS, Qamar MT, Weston AP. Incidence and management of esophageal stricture formation, ulcer bleeding, perforation, and massive hematoma formation from sclerotherapy versus band ligation. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2001; **96**: 437-441 [PMID: 11232687 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2001.03460.x]
14 **Yoshida H**, Mamada Y, Taniai N, Yamamoto K, Kawano Y, Mizuguchi Y, Shimizu T, Takahashi T, Tajiri T. A randomized control trial of bi-monthly versus bi-weekly endoscopic variceal ligation of esophageal varices. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 2005-2009 [PMID: 16128945 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2005.41864.x]
15 **D'Amico G**, Pagliaro L, Bosch J. Pharmacological treatment of portal hypertension: an evidence-based approach. *Semin Liver Dis* 1999; **19**: 475-505 [PMID: 10643630 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-1007133]
16 **Poynard T**, Calès P, Pasta L, Ideo G, Pascal JP, Pagliaro L, Lebrec D. Beta-adrenergic-antagonist drugs in the prevention of gastrointestinal bleeding in patients with cirrhosis and esophageal varices. An analysis of data and prognostic factors in 589 patients from four randomized clinical trials. Franco-Italian Multicenter Study Group. *N Engl J Med* 1991; **324**: 1532-1538 [PMID: 1674104 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199105303242202]
17 **Garcia-Tsao G**, Bosch J. Management of varices and variceal hemorrhage in cirrhosis. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 823-832 [PMID: 20200386 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra0901512]
18 **Imperiale TF**, Chalasani N. A meta-analysis of endoscopic variceal ligation for primary prophylaxis of esophageal variceal bleeding. *Hepatology* 2001; **33**: 802-807 [PMID: 11283842 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2001.23054]
19 **Gluud LL**, Krag A. Banding ligation versus beta-blockers for primary prevention in oesophageal varices in adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; **8**: CD004544 [PMID: 22895942 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004544.pub2]
20 **de Paulo GA**, Ardengh JC, Nakao FS, Ferrari AP. Treatment of esophageal varices: a randomized controlled trial comparing endoscopic sclerotherapy and EUS-guided sclerotherapy of esophageal collateral veins. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2006; **63**: 396-402; quiz 463 [PMID: 16500386 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2005.10.039]
21 **Augustin S**, Muntaner L, Altamirano JT, González A, Saperas E, Dot J, Abu-Suboh M, Armengol JR, Malagelada JR, Esteban R, Guardia J, Genescà J. Predicting early mortality after acute variceal hemorrhage based on classification and regression tree analysis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **7**: 1347-1354 [PMID: 19699816 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2009.08.011]
22 **Amitrano L**, Guardascione MA, Manguso F, Bennato R, Bove A, DeNucci C, Lombardi G, Martino R, Menchise A, Orsini L, Picascia S, Riccio E. The effectiveness of current acute variceal bleed treatments in unselected cirrhotic patients: refining short-term prognosis and risk factors. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 1872-1878 [PMID: 23007003 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2012.313]
23 **Augustin S**, Altamirano J, González A, Dot J, Abu-Suboh M, Armengol JR, Azpiroz F, Esteban R, Guardia J, Genescà J. Effectiveness of combined pharmacologic and ligation therapy in high-risk patients with acute esophageal variceal bleeding. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2011; **106**: 1787-1795 [PMID: 21625271 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.173]
24 **Castañeda B**, Morales J, Lionetti R, Moitinho E, Andreu V, Pérez-Del-Pulgar S, Pizcueta P, Rodés J, Bosch J. Effects of blood volume restitution following a portal hypertensive-related bleeding in anesthetized cirrhotic rats. *Hepatology* 2001; **33**: 821-825 [PMID: 11283845 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2001.23437]
25 **Villanueva C**, Colomo A, Bosch A, Concepción M, Hernandez-Gea V, Aracil C, Graupera I, Poca M, Alvarez-Urturi C, Gordillo J, Guarner-Argente C, Santaló M, Muñiz E, Guarner C. Transfusion strategies for acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **368**: 11-21 [PMID: 23281973 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1211801]
26 **Hou MC**, Lin HC, Liu TT, Kuo BI, Lee FY, Chang FY, Lee SD. Antibiotic prophylaxis after endoscopic therapy prevents rebleeding in acute variceal hemorrhage: a randomized trial. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 746-753 [PMID: 14999693 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20126]
27 **Chavez-Tapia NC**, Barrientos-Gutierrez T, Tellez-Avila F, Soares-Weiser K, Mendez-Sanchez N, Gluud C, Uribe M. Meta-analysis: antibiotic prophylaxis for cirrhotic patients with upper gastrointestinal bleeding - an updated Cochrane review. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **34**: 509-518 [PMID: 21707680 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04746.x]
28 **Bañares R**, Albillos A, Rincón D, Alonso S, González M, Ruiz-del-Arbol L, Salcedo M, Molinero LM. Endoscopic treatment versus endoscopic plus pharmacologic treatment for acute variceal bleeding: a meta-analysis. *Hepatology* 2002; **35**: 609-615 [PMID: 11870374 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2002.31354]
29 **Laine L**, Cook D. Endoscopic ligation compared with sclerotherapy for treatment of esophageal variceal bleeding. A meta-analysis. *Ann Intern Med* 1995; **123**: 280-287 [PMID: 7611595 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-123-4-199508150-00007]
30 **Avgerinos A**, Armonis A, Stefanidis G, Mathou N, Vlachogiannakos J, Kougioumtzian A, Triantos C, Papaxoinis C, Manolakopoulos S, Panani A, Raptis SA. Sustained rise of portal pressure after sclerotherapy, but not band ligation, in acute variceal bleeding in cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 1623-1630 [PMID: 15185303 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20236]
31 **Lahoti S**, Catalano MF, Alcocer E, Hogan WJ, Geenen JE. Obliteration of esophageal varices using EUS-guided sclerotherapy with color Doppler. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2000; **51**: 331-333 [PMID: 10699783 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(00)70363-4]
32 **Cipolletta L**, Zambelli A, Bianco MA, De Grazia F, Meucci C, Lupinacci G, Salerno R, Piscopo R, Marmo R, Orsini L, Rotondano G. Acrylate glue injection for acutely bleeding oesophageal varices: A prospective cohort study. *Dig Liver Dis* 2009; **41**: 729-734 [PMID: 19362522 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2009.02.006]
33 **Villanueva C**, Ortiz J, Miñana J, Soriano G, Sàbat M, Boadas J, Balanzó J. Somatostatin treatment and risk stratification by continuous portal pressure monitoring during acute variceal bleeding. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **121**: 110-117 [PMID: 11438499 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2001.25536]
34 **García-Pagán JC**, Caca K, Bureau C, Laleman W, Appenrodt B, Luca A, Abraldes JG, Nevens F, Vinel JP, Mössner J, Bosch J. Early use of TIPS in patients with cirrhosis and variceal bleeding. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 2370-2379 [PMID: 20573925 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0910102]
35 **Graham DY**, Smith JL. The course of patients after variceal hemorrhage. *Gastroenterology* 1981; **80**: 800-809 [PMID:

6970703]
36 **Burroughs AK**. The natural history of varices. *J Hepatol* 1993; **17** Suppl 2: S10-S13 [PMID: 8491964 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(05)80448-9]
37 **Li L**, Yu C, Li Y. Endoscopic band ligation versus pharmacological therapy for variceal bleeding in cirrhosis: a meta-analysis. *Can J Gastroenterol* 2011; **25**: 147-155 [PMID: 21499579]
38 **Garcia-Pagán JC**, Bosch J. Endoscopic band ligation in the treatment of portal hypertension. *Nat Clin Pract Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **2**: 526-535 [PMID: 16355158 DOI: 10.1038/ncpgasthep0323]
39 **Thiele M**, Krag A, Rohde U, Gluud LL. Meta-analysis: banding ligation and medical interventions for the prevention of rebleeding from oesophageal varices. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2012; **35**: 1155-1165 [PMID: 22449261 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2012.05074.x]
40 **Lo GH**, Lai KH, Cheng JS, Chen MH, Huang HC, Hsu PI, Lin CK. Endoscopic variceal ligation plus nadolol and sucralfate compared with ligation alone for the prevention of variceal rebleeding: a prospective, randomized trial. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 461-465 [PMID: 10960435 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2000.16236]
41 **de la Peña J**, Brullet E, Sanchez-Hernández E, Rivero M, Vergara M, Martin-Lorente JL, Garcia Suárez C. Variceal ligation plus nadolol compared with ligation for prophylaxis of variceal rebleeding: a multicenter trial. *Hepatology* 2005; **41**: 572-578 [PMID: 15726659 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20584]
42 **Kumar A**, Jha SK, Sharma P, Dubey S, Tyagi P, Sharma BC, Sarin SK. Addition of propranolol and isosorbide mononitrate to endoscopic variceal ligation does not reduce variceal rebleeding incidence. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **137**: 892-901, 901.e1 [PMID: 19481079 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.05.049]
43 **García-Pagán JC**, Villanueva C, Albillos A, Bañares R, Morillas R, Abraldes JG, Bosch J. Nadolol plus isosorbide mononitrate alone or associated with band ligation in the prevention of recurrent bleeding: a multicentre randomised controlled trial. *Gut* 2009; **58**: 1144-1150 [PMID: 19218249 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2008.171207]
44 **Lo GH**, Chen WC, Chan HH, Tsai WL, Hsu PI, Lin CK, Chen TA, Lai KH. A randomized, controlled trial of banding ligation plus drug therapy versus drug therapy alone in the prevention of esophageal variceal rebleeding. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **24**: 982-987 [PMID: 19638080 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2009.05792.x]
45 **Gournay J**, Masliah C, Martin T, Perrin D, Galmiche JP. Isosorbide mononitrate and propranolol compared with propranolol alone for the prevention of variceal rebleeding. *Hepatology* 2000; **31**: 1239-1245 [PMID: 10827148 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2000.8106]
46 **Bureau C**, Garcia-Pagan JC, Otal P, Pomier-Layrargues G, Chabbert V, Cortez C, Perreault P, Péron JM, Abraldes JG, Bouchard L, Bilbao JI, Bosch J, Rousseau H, Vinel JP. Improved clinical outcome using polytetrafluoroethylene-coated stents for TIPS: results of a randomized study. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 469-475 [PMID: 14762784 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2003.11.016]
47 **Grace ND**, Conn HO, Resnick RH, Groszmann RJ, Atterbury CE, Wright SC, Gusberg RJ, Vollman R, Garcia-Tsao G, Fisher RL. Distal splenorenal vs. portal-systemic shunts after hemorrhage from varices: a randomized controlled trial. *Hepatology* 1988; **8**: 1475-1481 [PMID: 3056820 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840080602]
48 **Azoulay D**, Castaing D, Majno P, Saliba F, Ichaï P, Smail A, Delvart V, Danaoui M, Samuel D, Bismuth H. Salvage transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt for uncontrolled variceal bleeding in patients with decompensated cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2001; **35**: 590-597 [PMID: 11690704 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(01)00185-4]
49 **Vangeli M**, Patch D, Burroughs AK. Salvage tips for uncontrolled variceal bleeding. *J Hepatol* 2002; **37**: 703-704 [PMID: 12399244 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(02)00321-5]
50 **D'Amico G**, Pagliaro L, Bosch J. The treatment of portal hypertension: a meta-analytic review. *Hepatology* 1995; **22**: 332-354 [PMID: 7601427 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840220145]
51 **Wright G**, Lewis H, Hogan B, Burroughs A, Patch D, O' Beirne J. A self-expanding metal stent for complicated variceal hemorrhage: experience at a single center. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **71**: 71-78 [PMID: 19879564 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2009.07.028]
52 **Hubmann R**, Bodlaj G, Czompo M, Benkö L, Pichler P, Al-Kathib S, Kiblböck P, Shamyieh A, Biesenbach G. The use of self-expanding metal stents to treat acute esophageal variceal bleeding. *Endoscopy* 2006; **38**: 896-901 [PMID: 16981106 DOI: 10.1055/s-2006-944662]
53 **Zehetner J**, Shamiyeh A, Wayand W, Hubmann R. Results of a new method to stop acute bleeding from esophageal varices: implantation of a self-expanding stent. *Surg Endosc* 2008; **22**: 2149-2152 [PMID: 18622540 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-008-0009-7]
54 **Dechêne A**, El Fouly AH, Bechmann LP, Jochum C, Saner FH, Gerken G, Canbay A. Acute management of refractory variceal bleeding in liver cirrhosis by self-expanding metal stents. *Digestion* 2012; **85**: 185-191 [PMID: 22269340 DOI: 10.1159/000335081]
55 **Ibrahim M**, El-Mikkawy A, Mostafa I, Devière J. Endoscopic treatment of acute variceal hemorrhage by using hemostatic powder TC-325: a prospective pilot study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **78**: 769-773 [PMID: 24120338 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.07.037]
56 **Sarin SK**, Lahoti D, Saxena SP, Murthy NS, Makwana UK. Prevalence, classification and natural history of gastric varices: a long-term follow-up study in 568 portal hypertension patients. *Hepatology* 1992; **16**: 1343-1349 [PMID: 1446890 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840160607]
57 **Ryan BM**, Stockbrugger RW, Ryan JM. A pathophysiologic, gastroenterologic, and radiologic approach to the management of gastric varices. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 1175-1189 [PMID: 15057756 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2004.01.058]
58 **Kim T**, Shijo H, Kokawa H, Tokumitsu H, Kubara K, Ota K, Akiyoshi N, Iida T, Yokoyama M, Okumura M. Risk factors for hemorrhage from gastric fundal varices. *Hepatology* 1997; **25**: 307-312 [PMID: 9021939 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510250209]
59 **Mishra SR**, Sharma BC, Kumar A, Sarin SK. Primary prophylaxis of gastric variceal bleeding comparing cyanoacrylate injection and beta-blockers: a randomized controlled trial. *J Hepatol* 2011; **54**: 1161-1167 [PMID: 21145834 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.09.031]
60 **Consolo P**, Luigiano C, Giacobbe G, Scaffidi MG, Pellicano R, Familiari L. Cyanoacrylate glue in the management of gastric varices. *Minerva Med* 2009; **100**: 115-121 [PMID: 19078888]
61 **Tan PC**, Hou MC, Lin HC, Liu TT, Lee FY, Chang FY, Lee SD. A randomized trial of endoscopic treatment of acute gastric variceal hemorrhage: N-butyl-2-cyanoacrylate injection versus band ligation. *Hepatology* 2006; **43**: 690-697 [PMID: 16557539 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21145]
62 **Lo GH**, Lai KH, Cheng JS, Chen MH, Chiang HT. A prospective, randomized trial of butyl cyanoacrylate injection versus band ligation in the management of bleeding gastric varices. *Hepatology* 2001; **33**: 1060-1064 [PMID: 11343232 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2001.24116]
63 **Cheng LF**, Wang ZQ, Li CZ, Lin W, Yeo AE, Jin B. Low incidence of complications from endoscopic gastric variceal obturation with butyl cyanoacrylate. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **8**: 760-766 [PMID: 20621678 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2010.05.019]
64 **Joo HS**, Jang JY, Eun SH, Kim SK, Jung IS, Ryu CB, Kim YS, Kim JO, Cho JY, Kim YS, Lee JS, Lee MS, Shim CS, Kim

BS. [Long-term results of endoscopic histoacryl (N-butyl-2-cyanoacrylate) injection for treatment of gastric varices--a 10-year experience]. *Korean J Gastroenterol* 2007; **49**: 320-326 [PMID: 17525520]

65 **Binmoeller KF**, Weilert F, Shah JN, Kim J. EUS-guided transesophageal treatment of gastric fundal varices with combined coiling and cyanoacrylate glue injection (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **74**: 1019-1025 [PMID: 21889139 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.06.030]

66 **Romero-Castro R**, Ellrichmann M, Ortiz-Moyano C, Subtil-Inigo JC, Junquera-Florez F, Gornals JB, Repiso-Ortega A, Vila-Costas J, Marcos-Sanchez F, Muñoz-Navas M, Romero-Gomez M, Brullet-Benedi E, Romero-Vazquez J, Caunedo-Alvarez A, Pellicer-Bautista F, Herrerias-Gutierrez JM, Fritscher-Ravens A. EUS-guided coil versus cyanoacrylate therapy for the treatment of gastric varices: a multicenter study (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **78**: 711-721 [PMID: 23891417 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.05.009]

67 **Datta D**, Vlavianos P, Alisa A, Westaby D. Use of fibrin glue (beriplast) in the management of bleeding gastric varices. *Endoscopy* 2003; **35**: 675-678 [PMID: 12929063 DOI: 10.1055/s-2003-41517]

68 **Heneghan MA**, Byrne A, Harrison PM. An open pilot study of the effects of a human fibrin glue for endoscopic treatment of patients with acute bleeding from gastric varices. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2002; **56**: 422-426 [PMID: 12196788 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(02)70054-0]

69 **Przemioslo RT**, McNair A, Williams R. Thrombin is effective in arresting bleeding from gastric variceal hemorrhage. *Dig Dis Sci* 1999; **44**: 778-781 [PMID: 10219838 DOI: 10.1023/A:1026626212129]

70 **Yang WL**, Tripathi D, Therapondos G, Todd A, Hayes PC. Endoscopic use of human thrombin in bleeding gastric varices. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 1381-1385 [PMID: 12094854 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2002.05776.x]

71 **Garcia-Pagán JC**, Barrufet M, Cardenas A, Escorsell A. Management of gastric varices. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **12**: 919-928.e1; quiz e51-52 [PMID: 23899955 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2013.07.015]

72 **Sarin SK**, Jain AK, Jain M, Gupta R. A randomized controlled trial of cyanoacrylate versus alcohol injection in patients with isolated fundic varices. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 1010-1015 [PMID: 12003381 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2002.05622.x]

73 **Lo GH**, Liang HL, Chen WC, Chen MH, Lai KH, Hsu PI, Lin CK, Chan HH, Pan HB. A prospective, randomized controlled trial of transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt versus cyanoacrylate injection in the prevention of gastric variceal rebleeding. *Endoscopy* 2007; **39**: 679-685 [PMID: 17661241 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-966591]

74 **Merli M**, Nicolini G, Angeloni S, Gentili F, Attili AF, Riggio O. The natural history of portal hypertensive gastropathy in patients with liver cirrhosis and mild portal hypertension. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2004; **99**: 1959-1965 [PMID: 15447756 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2004.40246.x]

75 **de Franchis R**. Updating consensus in portal hypertension: report of the Baveno III Consensus Workshop on definitions, methodology and therapeutic strategies in portal hypertension. *J Hepatol* 2000; **33**: 846-852 [PMID: 11097497 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(00)80320-7]

76 **Primignani M**, Carpinelli L, Preatoni P, Battaglia G, Carta A, Prada A, Cestari R, Angeli P, Gatta A, Rossi A, Spinzi G, De Franchis R. Natural history of portal hypertensive gastropathy in patients with liver cirrhosis. The New Italian Endoscopic Club for the study and treatment of esophageal varices (NIEC). *Gastroenterology* 2000; **119**: 181-187 [PMID: 10889167 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2000.8555]

77 **Ripoll C**, Garcia-Tsao G. The management of portal hypertensive gastropathy and gastric antral vascular ectasia. *Dig Liver Dis* 2011; **43**: 345-351 [PMID: 21095166 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2010.10.006]

78 **Kouroumalis EA**, Koutroubakis IE, Manousos ON. Somatostatin for acute severe bleeding from portal hypertensive gastropathy. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1998; **10**: 509-512 [PMID: 9855068]

79 **Zhou Y**, Qiao L, Wu J, Hu H, Xu C. Comparison of the efficacy of octreotide, vasopressin, and omeprazole in the control of acute bleeding in patients with portal hypertensive gastropathy: a controlled study. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2002; **17**: 973-979 [PMID: 12167118 DOI: 10.1046/j.1440-1746.2002.02775.x]

80 **Bruha R**, Marecek Z, Spicak J, Hulek P, Lata J, Petrtyl J, Urbanek P, Taimr P, Volfova M, Dite P. Double-blind randomized, comparative multicenter study of the effect of terlipressin in the treatment of acute esophageal variceal and/or hypertensive gastropathy bleeding. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2002; **49**: 1161-1166 [PMID: 12143227]

81 **Herrera S**, Bordas JM, Llach J, Ginès A, Pellisé M, Fernández-Esparrach G, Mondelo F, Mata A, Cárdenas A, Castells A. The beneficial effects of argon plasma coagulation in the management of different types of gastric vascular ectasia lesions in patients admitted for GI hemorrhage. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 440-446 [PMID: 18423466 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.02.009]

82 **Kamath PS**, Lacerda M, Ahlquist DA, McKusick MA, Andrews JC, Nagorney DA. Gastric mucosal responses to intrahepatic portosystemic shunting in patients with cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **118**: 905-911 [PMID: 10784589 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(00)70176-4]

83 **Smith LA**, Morris AJ, Stanley AJ. The use of hemospray in portal hypertensive bleeding; a case series. *J Hepatol* 2014; **60**: 457-460 [PMID: 24140803 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.10.008]

84 **Ward EM**, Raimondo M, Rosser BG, Wallace MB, Dickson RD. Prevalence and natural history of gastric antral vascular ectasia in patients undergoing orthotopic liver transplantation. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2004; **38**: 898-900 [PMID: 15492609]

85 **Fontana RJ**, Sanyal AJ, Mehta S, Doherty MC, Neuschwander-Tetri BA, Everson GT, Kahn JA, Malet PF, Sheikh MY, Chung RT, Ghany MG, Gretch DR. Portal hypertensive gastropathy in chronic hepatitis C patients with bridging fibrosis and compensated cirrhosis: results from the HALT-C trial. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 983-992 [PMID: 16573786 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00461.x]

86 **Ito M**, Uchida Y, Kamano S, Kawabata H, Nishioka M. Clinical comparisons between two subsets of gastric antral vascular ectasia. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2001; **53**: 764-770 [PMID: 11375585 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2001.113922]

87 **Gostout CJ**, Ahlquist DA, Radford CM, Viggiano TR, Bowyer BA, Balm RK. Endoscopic laser therapy for watermelon stomach. *Gastroenterology* 1989; **96**: 1462-1465 [PMID: 2785467]

88 **Sargeant IR**, Loizou LA, Rampton D, Tulloch M, Bown SG. Laser ablation of upper gastrointestinal vascular ectasias: long term results. *Gut* 1993; **34**: 470-475 [PMID: 8491392 DOI: 10.1136/gut.34.4.470]

89 **Potamiano S**, Carter CR, Anderson JR. Endoscopic laser treatment of diffuse gastric antral vascular ectasia. *Gut* 1994; **35**: 461-463 [PMID: 8174981 DOI: 10.1136/gut.35.4.461]

90 **Roman S**, Saurin JC, Dumortier J, Perreira A, Bernard G, Ponchon T. Tolerance and efficacy of argon plasma coagulation for controlling bleeding in patients with typical and atypical manifestations of watermelon stomach. *Endoscopy* 2003; **35**: 1024-1028 [PMID: 14648415 DOI: 10.1055/s-2003-44594]

91 **Yusoff I**, Brennan F, Ormonde D, Laurence B. Argon plasma coagulation for treatment of watermelon stomach. *Endoscopy* 2002; **34**: 407-410 [PMID: 11972274 DOI: 10.1055/

s-2002-25287]
92 **Probst A**, Scheubel R, Wienbeck M. Treatment of watermelon stomach (GAVE syndrome) by means of endoscopic argon plasma coagulation (APC): long-term outcome. *Z Gastroenterol* 2001; **39**: 447-452 [PMID: 11474999 DOI: 10.1055/s-2001-15722]
93 **Wells CD**, Harrison ME, Gurudu SR, Crowell MD, Byrne TJ, Depetris G, Sharma VK. Treatment of gastric antral vascular ectasia (watermelon stomach) with endoscopic band ligation. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 231-236 [PMID: 18533150 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.02.021]
94 **Sato T**, Yamazaki K, Akaike J. Endoscopic band ligation versus argon plasma coagulation for gastric antral vascular ectasia associated with liver diseases. *Dig Endosc* 2012; **24**: 237-242 [PMID: 22725108 DOI: 10.1111/j.1443-1661.2011.01221.x]
95 **Keohane J**, Berro W, Harewood GC, Murray FE, Patchett SE. Band ligation of gastric antral vascular ectasia is a safe and effective endoscopic treatment. *Dig Endosc* 2013; **25**: 392-396 [PMID: 23808945 DOI: 10.1111/j.1443-1661.2012.01410.x]
96 **Gross SA**, Al-Haddad M, Gill KR, Schore AN, Wallace MB. Endoscopic mucosal ablation for the treatment of gastric antral vascular ectasia with the HALO90 system: a pilot study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **67**: 324-327 [PMID: 18226696 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.09.020]
97 **McGorisk T**, Krishnan K, Keefer L, Komanduri S. Radiofrequency ablation for refractory gastric antral vascular ectasia (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **78**: 584-588 [PMID: 23660565 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.04.173]
98 **Kantsevoy SV**, Cruz-Correa MR, Vaughn CA, Jagannath SB, Pasricha PJ, Kalloo AN. Endoscopic cryotherapy for the treatment of bleeding mucosal vascular lesions of the GI tract: a pilot study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2003; **57**: 403-406 [PMID: 12612530 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2003.115]
99 **Cho S**, Zanati S, Yong E, Cirocco M, Kandel G, Kortan P, May G, Marcon N. Endoscopic cryotherapy for the management of gastric antral vascular ectasia. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 895-902 [PMID: 18640673 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.03.1109]
100 **Walia SS**, Sachdeva A, Kim JJ, Portocarrero DJ, Lewis TD, Zhao YS. Cyanoacrylate spray for treatment of difficult-to-control GI bleeding. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **78**: 536-539 [PMID: 23948199 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.05.011]
101 **Sherman V**, Klassen DR, Feldman LS, Jabbari M, Marcus V, Fried GM. Laparoscopic antrectomy: a novel approach to treating watermelon stomach. *J Am Coll Surg* 2003; **197**: 864-867 [PMID: 14585429 DOI: 10.1016/S1072-7515(03)00600-8]
102 **Norton ID**, Andrews JC, Kamath PS. Management of ectopic varices. *Hepatology* 1998; **28**: 1154-1158 [PMID: 9755256 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510280434]
103 **Lebrec D**, Benhamou JP. Ectopic varices in portal hypertension. *Clin Gastroenterol* 1985; **14**: 105-121 [PMID: 3872747]
104 **Watanabe N**, Toyonaga A, Kojima S, Takashimizu S, Oho K, Kokubu S, Nakamura K, Hasumi A, Murashima N, Tajiri T. Current status of ectopic varices in Japan: Results of a survey by the Japan Society for Portal Hypertension. *Hepatol Res* 2010; **40**: 763-776 [PMID: 20649816 DOI: 10.1111/j.1872-034X.2010.00690.x]
105 **Sato T**, Akaike J, Toyota J, Karino Y, Ohmura T. Clinicopathological features and treatment of ectopic varices with portal hypertension. *Int J Hepatol* 2011; **2011**: 960720 [PMID: 21994879 DOI: 10.4061/2011/960720]
106 **Liu Y**, Yang J, Wang J, Chai G, Sun G, Wang Z, Yang Y. Clinical characteristics and endoscopic treatment with cyanoacrylate injection in patients with duodenal varices. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2009; **44**: 1012-1016 [PMID: 19513934 DOI: 10.1080/00365520903030787]
107 **Seo YS**, Kwon YD, Park S, Keum B, Park BJ, Kim YS, Jeen YT, Chun HJ, Kim CD, Ryu HS, Um SH. Complete eradication of duodenal varices after endoscopic injection sclerotherapy with ethanolamine oleate: a case report. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **67**: 759-762 [PMID: 18206152 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.08.027]
108 **Schmeltzer PA**, Smith MT. Duodenal variceal bleeding successfully treated with endoscopic banding (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **74**: 716-717 [PMID: 21111410 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.09.030]
109 **Sousa HT**, Gregório C, Amaro P, Ferreira M, Romãozinho JM, Gouveia H, Leitão MC. Successful endoscopic banding after cyanoacrylate failure for active bleeding duodenal varix. *Rev Esp Enferm Dig* 2008; **100**: 171-172 [PMID: 18416643]
110 **Gunnerson AC**, Diehl DL, Nguyen VN, Shellenberger MJ, Blansfield J. Endoscopic duodenal variceal ligation: a series of 4 cases and review of the literature (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **76**: 900-904 [PMID: 22840294 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.05.020]
111 **Hashimoto R**, Sofue K, Takeuchi Y, Shibamoto K, Arai Y. Successful balloon-occluded retrograde transvenous obliteration for bleeding duodenal varices using cyanoacrylate. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 951-954 [PMID: 23429766 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i6.951]
112 **Kim MJ**, Jang BK, Chung WJ, Hwang JS, Kim YH. Duodenal variceal bleeding after balloon-occluded retrograde transverse obliteration: treatment with transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 2877-2880 [PMID: 22719200 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i22.2877]
113 **De Palma GD**, Rega M, Masone S, Persico F, Siciliano S, Patrone F, Matantuono L, Persico G. Mucosal abnormalities of the small bowel in patients with cirrhosis and portal hypertension: a capsule endoscopy study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2005; **62**: 529-534 [PMID: 16185966 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(05)01588-9]
114 **Misra SP**, Dwivedi M, Misra V, Gupta M. Ileal varices and portal hypertensive ileopathy in patients with cirrhosis and portal hypertension. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2004; **60**: 778-783 [PMID: 15557954 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(04)02049-8]
115 **Getzlaff S**, Benz CA, Schilling D, Riemann JF. Enteroscopic cyanoacrylate sclerotherapy of jejunal and gallbladder varices in a patient with portal hypertension. *Endoscopy* 2001; **33**: 462-464 [PMID: 11396768 DOI: 10.1055/s-2001-14258]
116 **Hekmat H**, Al-toma A, Mallant MP, Mulder CJ, Jacobs MA. Endoscopic N-butyl-2-cyanoacrylate (Histoacryl) obliteration of jejunal varices by using the double balloon enteroscope. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2007; **65**: 350-352 [PMID: 17259003 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2006.07.001]
117 **Kachaamy T**, Harrison ME. Successful treatment of bleeding ileal varices by double-balloon enteroscopy and cyanoacrylate injection (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **80**: 170-171; discussion 171 [PMID: 24703088 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2014.02.024]
118 **Varanasi RV**, Fleisher AS, Darwin PE, King CE, Haluszka O. Colonoscopic sclerotherapy of ileal varices. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2000; **52**: 109-111 [PMID: 10882977 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2000.106538]
119 **Vangeli M**, Patch D, Terreni N, Tibballs J, Watkinson A, Davies N, Burroughs AK. Bleeding ectopic varices--treatment with transjugular intrahepatic porto-systemic shunt (TIPS) and embolisation. *J Hepatol* 2004; **41**: 560-566 [PMID: 15464235 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2004.06.024]
120 **Ganguly S**, Sarin SK, Bhatia V, Lahoti D. The prevalence and spectrum of colonic lesions in patients with cirrhotic and noncirrhotic portal hypertension. *Hepatology* 1995; **21**: 1226-1231 [PMID: 7737627]
121 **Misra SP**, Dwivedi M. Ligation of a bleeding colonic varix

using an upper gastrointestinal endoscope. *Endoscopy* 2006; **38**: 657 [PMID: 16673302 DOI: 10.1055/s-2006-925189]
122 **Chen WC**, Hou MC, Lin HC, Chang FY, Lee SD. An endoscopic injection with N-butyl-2-cyanoacrylate used for colonic variceal bleeding: a case report and review of the literature. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 540-542 [PMID: 10685765 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2000.01782.x]
123 **Schafer TW**, Binmoeller KF. Argon plasma coagulation for the treatment of colonic varices. *Endoscopy* 2002; **34**: 661-663 [PMID: 12173089 DOI: 10.1055/s-2002-33238]
124 **Chevallier P**, Motamedi JP, Demuth N, Caroli-Bosc FX, Oddo F, Padovani B. Ascending colonic variceal bleeding: utility of phase-contrast MR portography in diagnosis and follow-up after treatment with TIPS and variceal embolization. *Eur Radiol* 2000; **10**: 1280-1283 [PMID: 10939490 DOI: 10.1007/s003309900308]
125 **Anan A**, Irie M, Watanabe H, Sohda T, Iwata K, Suzuki N, Yoshikane M, Nakane H, Hashiba T, Yokoyama M, Higashihara H, Okazaki M, Sakisaka S. Colonic varices treated by balloon-occluded retrograde transvenous obliteration in a cirrhotic patient with encephalopathy: a case report. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2006; **63**: 880-884 [PMID: 16650568 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2005.11.038]
126 **Lopes LM**, Ramada JM, Certo MG, Pereira PR, Soares JM, Ribeiro M, Areias J, Pinho C. Massive lower gastrointestinal bleeding from idiopathic ileocolonic varix: report of a case. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2006; **49**: 524-526 [PMID: 16395635 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-005-0279-2]
127 **Hosking SW**, Smart HL, Johnson AG, Triger DR. Anorectal varices, haemorrhoids, and portal hypertension. *Lancet* 1989; **1**: 349-352 [PMID: 2563507 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(89)91724-8]
128 **Chawla Y**, Dilawari JB. Anorectal varices--their frequency in cirrhotic and non-cirrhotic portal hypertension. *Gut* 1991; **32**: 309-311 [PMID: 2013427 DOI: 10.1136/gut.32.3.309]
129 **Goenka MK**, Kochhar R, Nagi B, Mehta SK. Rectosigmoid varices and other mucosal changes in patients with portal hypertension. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1991; **86**: 1185-1189 [PMID: 1882798]
130 **Sato T**, Yamazaki K, Akaike J, Toyota J, Karino Y, Ohmura T. Retrospective analysis of endoscopic injection sclerotherapy for rectal varices compared with band ligation. *Clin Exp Gastroenterol* 2010; **3**: 159-163 [PMID: 21694861 DOI: 10.2147/CEG.S15401]
131 **Ryu SH**, Moon JS, Kim I, Kim YS, Lee JH. Endoscopic injection sclerotherapy with N-butyl-2-cyanoacrylate in a patient with massive rectal variceal bleeding: a case report. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2005; **62**: 632-635 [PMID: 16185988 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2005.05.012]
132 **Firoozi B**, Gamagaris Z, Weinshel EH, Bini EJ. Endoscopic band ligation of bleeding rectal varices. *Dig Dis Sci* 2002; **47**: 1502-1505 [PMID: 12141807 DOI: 10.1023/A:1015802732217]
133 **Coelho-Prabhu N**, Baron TH, Kamath PS. Endoscopic band ligation of rectal varices: a case series. *Endoscopy* 2010; **42**: 173-176 [PMID: 20140834 DOI: 10.1055/s-0029-1243840]
134 **Sharma M**, Somasundaram A. Massive lower GI bleed from an endoscopically inevident rectal varices: diagnosis and management by EUS (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **72**: 1106-1108 [PMID: 20579995 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.02.054]
135 **Levy MJ**, Wong Kee Song LM, Kendrick ML, Misra S, Gostout CJ. EUS-guided coil embolization for refractory ectopic variceal bleeding (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **67**: 572-574 [PMID: 17997404 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.06.063]
136 **Weilert F**, Shah JN, Marson FP, Binmoeller KF. EUS-guided coil and glue for bleeding rectal varix. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **76**: 915-916 [PMID: 22172480 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.09.027]
137 **Dhiman RK**, Behera A, Chawla YK, Dilawari JB, Suri S. Portal hypertensive biliopathy. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 1001-1008 [PMID: 17170017 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2006.103606]
138 **Palazzo L**, Hochain P, Helmer C, Cuillerier E, Landi B, Roseau G, Cugnenc PH, Barbier JP, Cellier C. Biliary varices on endoscopic ultrasonography: clinical presentation and outcome. *Endoscopy* 2000; **32**: 520-524 [PMID: 10917183 DOI: 10.1055/s-2000-9009]
139 **Sezgin O**, Oğuz D, Altintaş E, Saritaş U, Sahin B. Endoscopic management of biliary obstruction caused by cavernous transformation of the portal vein. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2003; **58**: 602-608 [PMID: 14520303 DOI: 10.1067/S0016-5107(03)01975-8]
140 **Chaudhary A**, Dhar P, Sarin SK, Sachdev A, Agarwal AK, Vij JC, Broor SL. Bile duct obstruction due to portal biliopathy in extrahepatic portal hypertension: surgical management. *Br J Surg* 1998; **85**: 326-329 [PMID: 9529484 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2168.1998.00591.x]
141 **Higaki N**, Matsui H, Imaoka H, Ikeda Y, Murakami H, Hiasa Y, Matsuura B, Onji M. Characteristic endoscopic features of portal hypertensive enteropathy. *J Gastroenterol* 2008; **43**: 327-331 [PMID: 18592149 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-008-2166-9]
142 **Barakat M**, Mostafa M, Mahran Z, Soliman AG. Portal hypertensive duodenopathy: clinical, endoscopic, and histopathologic profiles. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 2793-2802 [PMID: 17900330 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2007.01536.x]
143 **Kodama M**, Uto H, Numata M, Hori T, Murayama T, Sasaki F, Tsubouchi N, Ido A, Shimoda K, Tsubouchi H. Endoscopic characterization of the small bowel in patients with portal hypertension evaluated by double balloon endoscopy. *J Gastroenterol* 2008; **43**: 589-596 [PMID: 18709480 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-008-2198-1]
144 **Rondonotti E**, Villa F, Dell' Era A, Tontini GE, de Franchis R. Capsule endoscopy in portal hypertension. *Clin Liver Dis* 2010; **14**: 209-220 [PMID: 20682230 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2010.03.004]
145 **Akyuz F**, Pinarbasi B, Ermis F, Uyanikoglu A, Demir K, Ozdil S, Besisik F, Kaymakoglu S, Boztas G, Mungan Z. Is portal hypertensive enteropathy an important additional cause of blood loss in portal hypertensive patients? *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2010; **45**: 1497-1502 [PMID: 20695721 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2010.510568]
146 **Naveau S**, Bedossa P, Poynard T, Mory B, Chaput JC. Portal hypertensive colopathy. A new entity. *Dig Dis Sci* 1991; **36**: 1774-1781 [PMID: 1748048 DOI: 10.1007/BF01296624]
147 **Kozarek RA**, Botoman VA, Bredfeldt JE, Roach JM, Patterson DJ, Ball TJ. Portal colopathy: prospective study of colonoscopy in patients with portal hypertension. *Gastroenterology* 1991; **101**: 1192-1197 [PMID: 1936789]
148 **Misra SP**, Dwivedi M, Misra V. Prevalence and factors influencing hemorrhoids, anorectal varices, and colopathy in patients with portal hypertension. *Endoscopy* 1996; **28**: 340-345 [PMID: 8813499 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-1005477]
149 **Yamakado S**, Kanazawa H, Kobayashi M. Portal hypertensive colopathy: endoscopic findings and the relation to portal pressure. *Intern Med* 1995; **34**: 153-157 [PMID: 7787318]
150 **Bresci G**, Parisi G, Capria A. Clinical relevance of colonic lesions in cirrhotic patients with portal hypertension. *Endoscopy* 2006; **38**: 830-835 [PMID: 17001574 DOI: 10.1055/s-2006-944629]
151 **Rabinovitz M**, Schade RR, Dindzans VJ, Belle SH, Van Thiel DH, Gavaler JS. Colonic disease in cirrhosis. An endoscopic evaluation in 412 patients. *Gastroenterology* 1990; **99**: 195-199 [PMID: 2344925]
152 **Chen LS**, Lin HC, Lee FY, Hou MC, Lee SD. Portal hypertensive colopathy in patients with cirrhosis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1996; **31**: 490-494 [PMID: 8734347 DOI: 10.3109/00365529609006770]

153 **Yoshie K**, Fujita Y, Moriya A, Kawana I, Miyamoto K, Umemura S. Octreotide for severe acute bleeding from portal hypertensive colopathy: a case report. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2001; **13**: 1111-1113 [PMID: 11564965]

154 **Balzer C**, Lotterer E, Kleber G, Fleig WE. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt for bleeding angiodysplasia-like lesions in portal-hypertensive colopathy. *Gastroenterology* 1998; **115**: 167-172 [PMID: 9649472 DOI: 10.1016/S0016]

P- Reviewer: Bian ZX, Lindberg G, Senzolo M **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Zhang DN

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.13

World J Gastrointest Endosc 2015 January 16; 7(1): 13-36
ISSN 1948-5190 (online)

REVIEW

Small bowel capsule endoscopy: Where are we after almost 15 years of use?

Cedric Van de Bruaene, Danny De Looze, Pieter Hindryckx

Cedric Van de Bruaene, Danny De Looze, Pieter Hindryckx, Department of Gastro-enterology, University Hospital Ghent, 9000 Ghent, Belgium
Author contributions: Van de Bruaene C, De Looze D and Hindryckx P analyzed data; Van de Bruaene C and Hindryckx P wrote the paper; Van de Bruaene C, De Looze D and Hindryckx P revised the paper.
Conflict-of-interest: The authors declare that they have no competing interests.

Correspondence to: Pieter Hindryckx, MD, Department of Gastro-enterology, University Hospital Ghent, de pintelaan 185, 1K12, 9000 Ghent, Belgium. hindryckx@ugent.be
Telephone: +32-9-3322371
Fax: +32-9-2404984
Received: August 29, 2014
Peer-review started: August 29, 2014
First decision: September 30, 2014
Revised: October 16, 2014
Accepted: December 3, 2014
Article in press: December 10, 2014
Published online: January 16, 2015

Abstract

The development of capsule endoscopy (CE) in 2001 has given gastroenterologists the opportunity to investigate the small bowel in a non-invasive way. CE is most commonly performed for obscure gastrointestinal bleeding, but other indications include diagnosis or follow-up of Crohn's disease, suspicion of a small bowel tumor, diagnosis and surveillance of hereditary polyposis syndromes, Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug-induced small bowel lesions and celiac disease. Almost fifteen years have passed since the release of the small bowel capsule. The purpose of this review is to offer the reader a brief but complete overview on small bowel CE anno 2014, including the technical and procedural aspects, the possible complications and the most important indications. We will end with some future perspectives of CE.

Key words: Capsule endoscopy; Small bowel; Preparation; Procedure; Technology; Complications; Features; Enhancements; Indications; Future

Core tip: This review covers all the relevant aspects of small bowel capsule endoscopy anno 2014. The current techniques, procedures, analyses, indications and future perspectives are discussed thoroughly. Easy-to-use flowcharts are provided to help the readers in their decision-making when confronted with small bowel pathology.

Van de Bruaene C, De Looze D, Hindryckx P. Small bowel capsule endoscopy: Where are we after almost 15 years of use? *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; 7(1): 13-36 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5190/full/v7/i1/13.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.13

INTRODUCTION

Wireless Video capsule endoscopy (CE) was invented by Gavriel Iddan[1] in the mid-1990s. Being able to visualize the entire small bowel in a noninvasive, well-tolerated way, CE has closed the diagnostic gap between conventional gastroduodenoscopy and colonoscopy. Since the official release of CE in 2001, almost 15 years have passed, and CE has revolutionized the diagnosis and treatment of

various small intestinal diseases. This review aims to provide state of the art on CE in gastrointestinal diseases. Both the evolution in technique and in indications will be discussed.

TECHNICAL PRINCIPALS, PROCEDURE AND ANALYSIS

Capsule definition

The wireless CE system consists of 4 main parts: (1) the single-use wireless Video Capsule; (2) sensor arrays or a sensor belt attached to the patient; (3) the data recorder attached to the belt; and (4) the computer workstation with the application software[2-4] as can be seen in Figure 1 by Pan *et al*[4].

The capsule weighs less than 4 g and measures about 11 mm in diameter × 26 mm in length. It is made of plastic, biocompatible and resistant to digestive fluids. The capsule contains a short focal lens and a miniature video camera: a charge-coupled device or Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor, which focuses the image. The gastrointestinal tract is illuminated by white light LEDs. The capsule is powered by two mercury free silver oxide batteries with a life span of 8-12 h. More than 5000 images are transmitted during this battery life at a rate of 2-6 fps. Capsule features have evolved since the release of the first capsule and nowadays standards are a 156-170° field of view, a high resolution and sharpness with a minimum size of detection of 0.07 mm, a 1:8 magnification, a more homogenous light exposure and a depth of view of at least 20-30 mm[5]. The captured data are sent to the sensor arrays and belt worn by the patients by either ultra-high frequency band radio telemetry or human body communications, using the human body as conductor.

At present, there are three main companies supplying wireless CE systems by approval of the FDA. Given Imaging (Ltd, Yoqneam, Israel) supplying the PillCam® SB 3, Olympus America (Inc, Center Valley, Pennsylvania) supplying the EndoCapsule® and Intromedic Company (Ltd, Seoul, South Korea) manufacturing the MiroCam®. Although not approved by the FDA, another Chinese company, Jianshan Science and Technology (Group) Co., Ltd., Chongqing, has developed its own capsule: the OMOM capsule. The capsule has been approved by the State Food and Drug Administration of the People's Republic of China in March 2004 and is since then being used in China, Southeast Asia and some European countries[6]. The first large clinical trials have reported a yield and completion rate similar to the PillCam, but the major advantage of the OMOM capsule is without doubt its price, which could be reduced by fifty percent[6,7] (Table 1 and Figure 2).

Even though the three main capsules approved by the FDA differ in technical specifications, several trials have shown that they offer a comparable diagnostic yield, image quality and completion rate, as was stated in the systematic review by Koulaouzidis *et al*[8].

Small bowel preparation

To ensure a clear view on CE, the patient is asked to start fasting 12 h before the small bowel CE procedure[2,3]. However, due to bubbles, small intestinal fluid and biliary secretions coming from the major duodenal papilla, the visualization by the VCE can deteriorate. Furthermore, limited battery life span can hamper a complete intestinal examination in patients with delayed gastric emptying and small bowel transit, which necessitates the use of additional small bowel preparation[3]. However, not all patients are eligible for small bowel cleaning. The 2012 Consensus guidelines for the safe prescription and administration of oral bowel-cleansing agents[9] states that small bowel preparation is contraindicated in patients with gastrointestinal obstruction, perforation, ulceration, ileus, gastric retention or inflammatory bowel diseases (IBD), in patients with a reduced level of consciousness, swallowing disorders, hypersensitivity to the used agent and in patients having an ileostomy. The use of small bowel cleansing agents is relatively contraindicated in patients with chronic kidney disease or undergoing dialysis, in patients with a renal transplant, congestive heart failure, liver cirrhosis or ascites and in patients taking Renin-angiotensin blockers, diuretics or nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). In these patients the utility of small bowel cleaning should be reconsidered and the choice of cleaning agent is of main importance: polyethylene glycol (PEG) is normally preferred over Sodium Phosphate. Patients taking Renin-angiotensin blockers, diuretics or NSAIDs are advised to discontinue their medication temporarily and their hydration and electrolyte status should be checked prior to the small bowel preparation. In a recent systematic review, Kotwal *et al*[10] compared the results of various randomized-controlled trials regarding improvement of vision quality (VQ), diagnostic yield (DY) and completion rate (CR) by small bowel preparation. In this review, administration of 2L polyethylene glycol (PEG) the evening before VCE was found to be superior to two doses of 45 mL Sodium Phosphate before VCE regarding VQ and DY improvements. Another study by Kantianis *et al*[11] showed that 2 L as well as 4 L PEG did not differ in small bowel cleansing and CR. Therefore 2 L should be preferred as regimen before VCE. Furthermore Kotwal *et al*[10] stated that simethicone, an antifoaming agent, significantly improved the VQ by decreasing the bubbles without implications on CR. Yet no significant improvement in VQ and DY were observed by combining Simethicone with PEG. After meta-analysis prokinetics did not show a significant improvement in CR, so they are not recommended.

Procedure

After bowel preparation, the patient gets eight sensor arrays attached to his body and a sensor belt fastened around his waist. The data recorder is attached to the belt before capsule ingestion. The capsule is ingested with a glass of water and fluid restriction is needed till 2

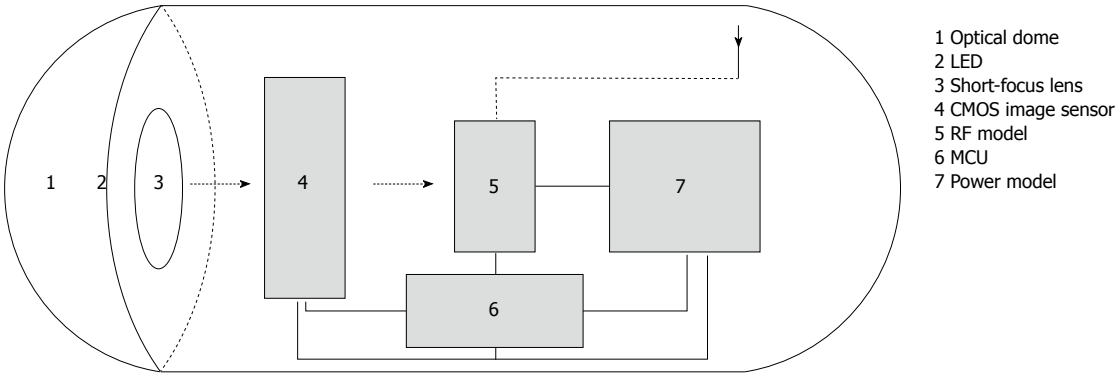


Figure 1 Main parts of the wireless capsule endoscope.

Table 1 Comparison between commercially available capsule endoscopy devices

Capsule	PillCam® SB 3 Given Imaging	EndoCapsule® Olympus America	MiroCam® Intromedic Company	OMOM® Jianshan Science and Technology
Size	Length: 26.2 mm Diameter: 11.4 mm	Length: 26 mm Diameter: 11 mm	Length: 24.5 mm Diameter: 10.8 mm	Length: 27.9 mm Diameter: 13 mm
Weight	3.00 g	3.50 g	3.25-4.70 g	6.00 g
Battery life	8 h or longer	8 h or longer	11 h or longer	6-8 h or longer
Resolution	340 x 340 30% better than SB2	512 x 512	320 x 320	640 x 480
Frames per second	2 fps or 2-6 fps	2 fps	3 fps	2 fps
Field of view	156°	145°	170°	140°
Communication	Radio Frequency Communication	Radio Frequency Communication	Human Body Communication	Radio Frequency Communication
FDA approval	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Price per capsule	$500	$500	$500	$250

h after ingestion. After 4 h, fasting can be stopped. Daily activities do not need to be interrupted during CE.

Capsule propulsion needs to be followed by real-time viewing during the first hour to make sure the capsule passes the stomach. If not, gastroscopy is performed to deposit the capsule in the duodenum.

The sensor arrays and belt are removed once the capsule has been expelled into the colon (as verified by real-time viewing), or when the battery life has expired. Images can be downloaded from the recorder to the workstation. The capsule itself passes naturally with bowel movement and is usually excreted within 24 to 72 h.

Analysis

After downloading the data from the recorder to the workstation, images can be reviewed by gastroenterologists using the application software. Reading time and interpretation are around 40-120 min[2,12] which can be, compared to conventional endoscopy, a time-consuming activity. A solution to this problem might be to train nonphysicians in pre reading the images. A study by Bossa *et al*[12] found that a nurse with expertise in endoscopy might be able to shorten the time needed by the endoscopist to read a capsule. Moreover the pre reading of the CE by the nurse endoscopist led to a more careful approach of the physician in the flagged areas, which enhanced the accuracy of the CE investigation. Another recent study by Dokoutsidou *et al*[13] confirmed these findings and stated that despite a longer reading time, a nurse is perfectly capable of pre reading and subsequently flagging aberrant images. However, another possibility to lower reading time is the use of special software to select aberrant images, which can be revised afterwards. With the introduction of Quickview by Given Imaging, reading time could be reduced significantly. The Quickview software samples sites of interest for review at a chosen rate, but unfortunately missed lesions occur far more often, which is unacceptable[14]. However, in certain clinical settings, such as overt obscure gastrointestinal bleeding (OGIB) in an urgent inpatient setting and suspected Crohn Disease or occult OGIB in outpatient setting, Koualouzidis *et al*[15] found that Quickview could be used confidently without clinical consequences. To enhance the yield of CE, virtual chromoendoscopy was developed by adding colour filters to the images. Fuji Intelligent Colour Enhancement (FICE) was seen to be superior in detecting small bowel lesions and in particular angioectasias compared to conventional CE[16]. In another trial by Krystallis *et al*[17] Blue Mode (BM) was found superior to FICE in detecting lesions of the small bowel. Adding BM to Quickview studies however did not show any diagnostic advantage and is therefore not recommended[15].

Figure 2 Types of small bowel capsule endoscopes. A: PillCam SB 3 (Given Imaging, Yoqneam, Israel); B: MiroCam (IntroMedic, Seoul, South Korea); C: Endo Capsule (Olympus America, Center Valley, PA); D: OMOM (Jinshan Science and Technology, Chongqing, China).

COMPLICATIONS AFTER CE

Capsule retention

Although very popular for its non-invasive character, CE can be the cause of unnecessary treatment due to complications. One of the most feared complications is capsule retention. It is defined as the presence of the capsule in the bowel lumen for a minimum of 2 wk after ingestion, or when the capsule is retained for an unspecified period of time unless targeted medical, endoscopic or surgical intervention is started[18].

According to a systematic review by Liao *et al*[19] overall retention rates are as low as 1.4%, which makes the procedure acceptable, regarding the high overall diagnostic yield of 59.4%. Furthermore, the retention rate differs according to the underlying pathology, with up to 2.6% in known Crohn's disease (CD) and 2.1% in patients with Neoplastic Lesions[19]. This can be explained by the fact that capsule retention is usually caused by masses, strictures and stenotic areas resulting from neoplastic lesions, CD, NSAID consumption or post-operative adhesions, which narrow the small bowel lumen and favors retention[20]. In this regard, known small bowel obstruction, strictures and extensive CD are a contraindication for CE[21]. In a large study by Höög *et al*[22] risk factors for capsule retention were identified. OGIB and suspected CD were associated with the lowest chance of capsule retention, whereas known CD and small bowel tumors had a higher chance of retention. These findings were also confirmed by other authors[19,23].

Most of the time, retained capsules are asymptomatic, but intestinal obstruction, partial or complete, may occur, especially in case of known CD or neoplastic lesions. In the 2009 consensus by the European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy it is recommended with a grade B evidence level to precede the CE by small bowel imaging or a patency capsule (PC) (cf. infra) in patients with suspected or established CD to rule out potential strictures. As said earlier, known small bowel obstruction is a contraindication for CE and patients at risk for a small bowel obstruction should therefore be carefully investigated by their physician before a CE procedure[24].

Evacuation of the retained capsule can be spontaneously, medically or by surgery. The latter is unfortunately the most frequent intervention, but is on the other hand safe and can be seen as a required diagnostic and therapeutic tool for treating the underlying small bowel condition. With the surgery, not only the capsule is removed, but also the responsible lesion can be resected, which reliefs the patient's symptoms. However retention can also lead to unnecessary surgery of lesions caused by, *e.g.*, NSAID or CD, for which a medical solution would also have been an option[25].

In recent years, an endoscopic approach of capsule retention has become more popular as a less invasive alternative for surgery. Before capsule retrieval a radiographic localization of the capsule is done to determine whether an upper or lower gastro-intestinal and a standard (gastroduodenoscopy, Push Enteroscopy or colonoscopy) or advanced endoscopic approach

(device assisted enteroscopy) is needed. In this regard, surgery can be considered when endoscopic approaches did not manage to retrieve the capsule or when the patient presents with symptoms of toxicity[26]. In a study by Van Weyenberg *et al*[27] DBE showed to be an adequate tool to retrieve a retained capsule. Moreover the DBE was capable to aid in pre-operative staging by histological sampling. In conclusion DBE can prevent unnecessary surgery as well as determine the cause of the capsule retention before the operation, which is beneficial both for physician and patient.

Capsule perforation

Another yet very rare complication is perforation of the small bowel. Usually it results from capsule retention. In the few cases that are reported, CD was the most frequent underlying pathology causing the perforation[20,28-31]. In a study by Repici *et al*[28] a possible explanation for this complication is given. CD affects the tissue of the small bowel wall and makes it vulnerable. By the complete luminal occlusion due to the entrapment of the capsule and the high peristaltic activity the fragile tissue of the small bowel wall distends just above the capsule and leads to fissuration and possible perforation of this area. One study by Gonzalez Carro *et al*[32] reported perforation after CE in a patient with a history of surgery with subsequent adhesions. Because of the major implications, perforation should be acknowledged as a possible complication after CE in patients with known or suspected CD.

Capsule interference

One of the relative contra-indications for CE is the presence of implantable cardiac devices, such as pacemakers, ICDs, pulsatile and nonpulsatile LVADs. Interference may arise during the CE procedure resulting in an alteration of atrial or ventricular assistance[33]. This is however a theoretical assumption without clinical significance, because few studies show actual interference between cardiac devices and CE. Moreover, previous studies have already suggested that CE can be used safely in patients with these devices[34-41]. Only one study by Dubner *et al*[42] reported oversensing of an ICD due to interference with the CE procedure, which resulted in an inappropriate shock by the cardiac device. In another case report by Guyomar *et al*[37] interference between pacemaker and video capsule occurred, resulting in a failure of recording by the capsule when close to the pulse generator. Harris *et al*[43] found similar results in a 2013 study: all implantable devices proved to be safe for the patient, but LVAD had the tendency to interfere with image capture and therefore a CE lead position as far away from the LVAD as possible is required. On the other hand, in the article by Cuschieri *et al*[40] no loss of images was observed. In conclusion, close monitoring is recommended in patients with implantable cardiac devices but the risk for complications seems to be extremely low.

Capsule aspiration

Some cases have reported the existence of bronchial aspiration of the capsule. It is a very rare complication, which occurs in one out of every 800 investigations and can be asymptomatic[44]. CE aspiration can resolve spontaneously[45], but often necessitates immediate radiological investigations to localize the capsule, followed by bronchoscopy to retrieve it with the aid of a Roth Net[44]. To prevent this unnecessary invasive procedure, screening for patients at risk should be done. Risk factors include aging, neurological or swallowing disorders and patients with a weak or absent cough[46,47]. Direct placement of the capsule in the gastrointestinal tract should be considered in these patients[44-46,48]. If not, the Real Time Viewer should be used during the ingestion of the capsule to make sure that the capsule reaches the gastrointestinal tract[46-48].

Until now, only one fatality has been reported due to intracerebral haemorrhage resulting from capsule aspiration[47]. The reason for this low mortality rate is hypothesized in a study by Lucendo *et al*[44] stating that the size of the capsule is not capable to block the total lumen of the trachea and therefore still allows adequate oxygenation after capsule aspiration. However Koulaouzidis *et al*[49] found that the CE size might be correlated with the chance of aspiration.

ADDITIONAL FEATURES AND ENHANCEMENTS IN THE FIELD OF CE

Suspected blood indicator

In 2003 Given Imaging introduced the Suspected Blood Indicator (SBI) as an aid in diagnostics. The new feature highlights images suspected for redness or blood, which makes it easier for physicians to identify possible bleeding sites accurately. The software is activated when the capsule has reached the duodenum and operates only during its stay in the small bowel[50].

Sensitivity of the SBI software is determined by the presence of active bleeding. In studies, sensitivity ranges from 20% to 56.4% and increases up to 58.3% to 93% in case of active bleeding[50-52]. However, sensitivity and specificity of SBI remains too low, so complete review by a gastroenterologist is still required and the SBI only serves as rapid screening tool for actively bleeding lesions[51,52].

The detection rate of the SBI is affected by background color of the small bowel as by velocity of the capsule[50]. This is also a possible explanation for the variation in sensitivity observed among different studies. The background of the small bowel differs according to patient's condition and small bowel preparation[50]. In experimental small intestine models, a very pale magenta background showed the highest detection rate, followed by burnt sierra and yellow. Lowest detection rates were observed in small bowel sites with colors significantly different from the normal small bowel color or when the capsule reached a high velocity. In an interesting study by

Buscaglia *et al*[53] SBI was found to be an inferior screening tool for sites of potential bleeding with a sensitivity below 60% even in active bleeding. Yet they found that in CD the SBI could be used as a screening tool for detection of aberrant mucosa with high sensitivity. Another study by D'Halluin *et al*[54] also rejected the SBI software as a useful tool for screening the small bowel stating that the detection rate was poor, independent of the type of lesion. Furthermore they found that the SBI missed certain lesions while tagging few others and that irrelevant flagging might unnecessarily prolong the reading time of the CE. However, in a recent study Tal *et al*[55] stated that SBI is a reliable aid in excluding active bleeding or major lesions, but that the role of the endoscopist could not be neglected. In summary we can conclude that SBI might improve the interpretation and thereby the yield of CE by tagging areas for a second review, but can certainly not replace the gastroenterologist's review.

PC

To address the problem of capsule retention, the Agile PC was developed by Given Imaging. The PC with the same size as a video capsule, serves as dummy to assess the patency of the small bowel prior to CE examination. As one of the major contraindications for CE is suspicion of small bowel stenosis, routine administration of PCs could enable safe CE use in a larger patient population by ruling out possible stenoses[56]. The PC system consists of two main parts: the capsule itself with a radiofrequency identification tag (RFID tag) and an external detector system to capture radio-frequency signals.

The PC is made of lactose and 10% barium, which dissolves when coming into contact with intestinal fluids through the window at the edge of the capsule, also known as timer plug. To insure that the timer plug is not blocked by capsule impaction in a stricture, the second generation PCs consist of two timer plugs. If excretion does not occur, dissolution starts at 30 h. After 35 h, 38 percent of the capsules are dissolved and all are dissolved within 72 h[57]. After dissolution, the remains of the capsule encounter no difficulties to pass the small bowel strictures.

The detector system receives the radio-frequency signals coming from the RFID tag and reconstructs the exact capsule position. This can also be done by using radiography, which visualizes the PC by its radiopaque RFID tag or 10% barium[56]. Localization can be complicated by overlap of intestines so subsequent fluoroscopy or CT scan can be warranted. One drawback of the RFID tag system is the probability of impaction in a stricture, which can lead to small bowel ileus[58]. Recently a new tag-less PC was developed by Given Imaging to overcome this issue and proved its usefulness as found by Nakamura *et al*[58].

The PC procedure is not as strict as the CE procedure. The capsule can be swallowed without previous food restrictions. If the capsule is not excreted in 33 h, further examination is warranted to localize the PC and make a distinction between a small bowel and a colonic localization. The latter is still an indication for VCE. The subsequent CE has to be done quickly after PC so a possible change of stricture status and subsequent capsule retention is avoided[56].

The use of the PC still remains controversial. Although some authors have reported its utility[59-61], others have found that the capsule was not capable of confirming stenoses, which were found on CT or small bowel follow through[62]. In conclusion, patients still benefit from a CT investigation prior to CE to exclude possible stenosis and strictures.

CapsoCam capsule

Over the last decade, a new player entered the field of CE. CapsoCam by Capsovision renewed the concept of CE by offering a capsule with a 360° view and on-board storage, which enables the retrieval of images wire-free after interception of the capsule in the feces. The capsule contains four cameras, which offer high resolution images and a frame rate up to 20 fps max. Furthermore, two new technologies were developed, Smart Motion Sense Technology and Auto Illumination Technology. Smart Motion Sense Technology enables the capsule to activate its cameras only during capsule motion. When the capsule is stationary, a sensor is used to compare the current frame with the previous frame to control reactivation. Auto Illumination Technology controls the 16 white LEDs to provide the optimal level of illumination. When the capsule is located nearby the walls, a low light intensity is optimal to capture the best images. A position further away from the wall necessitates a higher light intensity. By adding these software features, battery life is sustained up to 15 h. The first clinical trial that used the CapsoCam accepted it as a safe and efficient tool in small bowel evaluation[63]. In a recent French study by Pioche *et al*[64] the concordance between the PillCam SB2 and CapsoCam was evaluated in terms of diagnostic yield and image quality. A kappa value of 0.63 was obtained, which confirms the good concordance between the two capsules. Although the reading time of the CapsoCam was longer, the CapsoCam detected significantly more lesions in a per lesion analysis.

Three-dimensional representation

In recent years, three-dimensional representation is becoming a hot issue. By reproducing the depth information lost by camera recording, diagnosis can be facilitated, because the texture and the abnormalities of the mucosa are highlighted. 3-D rendering can be software- or hardware-based. The latter is limited by the technological possibilities of the capsule, so software based 2-D to 3-D conversion is used[65,66]. Software-based 3-D rendering uses algorithms to recreate the third dimension. In a study by Karargyris *et al*[67] four Shape-from-Shading (SfS) algorithms were compared. The Tsai's SfS algorithm excelled the other algorithms in

visualization improvements, but we may not forget that the evaluation criterion was subjective in origin. However, the Tsai's SfS algorithm is especially adapted to bright and round surfaces, therefore perfectly applicable in small bowel endoscopy.

Lesion localization

Apart from the image quality, accurate lesion localization is one of the key elements of CE, because further therapeutic steps, non-invasive and invasive, can depend on the exact localization of the lesion[68]. Lesion localization is currently estimated according to the transit time and the use of pylorus and caecum as landmarks, but lacks precision.

Exact localization can be determined by using a capsule emitting a magnetic field or electromagnetic waves. Both methods have their advantages and drawbacks. Magnetic-field-strength-based localization is not attenuated by the human body and the capsule does not have to be aligned with the detectors to be detected. As a drawback, interference of the magnetic fields for capsule localization and the magnetic fields for active capsule movement in the future (cf. infra) may occur. On the other hand electromagnetic waves localization, such as the previously mentioned RFID tag, is based on radio-frequency waves, which are attenuated by the human body and therefore may lose precision. A promising step forward in capsule localization is the development of a new software by Olympus Medical Systems Corporation (Tokyo, Japan), which uses a 3D-triangulation. The exact capsule position is calculated by determining its distance from the 6 radiofrequency sensors using radiofrequency signal strength. In the study by Marya *et al*[69] an average localization error of 13.26 cm^3 by attenuation was observed, especially in patients with an increased BMI.

Finally, in 2010 the Capsule-odometer, a conceptual CE design, was proposed by Karargyris *et al*[70] which in theory offers a more accurate lesion localization. The capsule has two protruding wheels attached to a spring-mechanism, so the wheels can adapt to the diameter of the intestinal lumen, serving as a micro-odometer with subsequent accurate lesion localization, calculated from the onset of the capsule investigation. This design also offered a greater stability, avoiding non-forward movement through the gastrointestinal tract. Further experiments and research are needed on this subject.

MAJOR INDICATIONS FOR SMALL BOWEL CE

CE has been approved for various indications. These include (1) overt and occult obscure gastrointestinal bleeding; (2) suspected CD; (3) surveillance in patients with polyposis syndromes and detection of small bowel tumors; (4) screening and evaluation of NSAID side-effects; and (5) suspected malabsorptive syndromes such as celiac disease. These indications will be explained further on in this paper. Relative contra-indications for CE include, like mentioned before: (1) known or suspected GI obstruction, strictures or fistulas; (2) cardiac devices; (3) swallowing disorders; and also (4) pregnancy.

Obscure gastrointestinal bleeding

Obscure gastro intestinal bleeding (OGIB) is defined as bleeding of unknown origin that persists or recurs following a bidirectional negative endoscopic evaluation of the gastrointestinal tract. OGIB is a common problem encountered by gastroenterologists, and accounts for approximately 5% of all GI bleedings[71]. OGIB can be overt (melena, hematochezia, hematemesis) or occult (iron-deficiency anaemia, IDA, with or without a positive fecal occult blood test). OGIB is mostly caused by a lesion located in the small bowel, but can also originate from a lesion in the other parts of the GI tract as well, missed with conventional endoscopy because of intermittent bleeding or by human error[72]. The underlying pathology is age dependent. Under the age of 40, the most frequently detected lesion is a small bowel tumor, followed by Meckel's diverticulum, Dieulafoy's lesion and CD. Above the age of 40, vascular lesions such as angiodysplasia are most frequently observed, counting for up to 40% of the underlying lesions. NSAID-induced lesions (cf. infra) are the second most frequent finding on CE[71].

Since its development in 2000, CE has mainly been used for the indication of OGIB, accounting for 60%-70% of the patients[8]. CE has proven superiority to all other diagnostic modalities in OGIB, such as barium contrast radiology, small bowel computed tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), push enteroscopy and angiography, as can be seen in Table 2. The American Society for Gastrointestinal Endoscopy (ASGE) confirmed these findings in their guidelines presented in 2007[71]. Before using CE as a diagnostic tool, at least one gastroduodenoscopy and ileocolonoscopy have to be performed to rule out upper and lower gastrointestinal tract abnormalities. Repeating gastroscopies or colonoscopies immediately prior to CE in patients who have not had endoscopic investigations for more than 6 mo, tends to have a low diagnostic yield and is not cost-effective[73]. Therefore, CE is recommended as the first-line investigation after negative bidirectional endoscopies. Younger patients however have a higher chance of IBD or tumours and a CT abdomen is indicated prior to CE to rule out stenosis[20]. A gynaecological etiology has to be considered in young females.

The overall yield of CE is between 35% and 83% for OGIB[19,71,72,74-80] with its mean around 60%[81,82]. Diagnostic yield is influenced by the type of bleeding. Patients with ongoing overt bleeding usually present with a higher diagnostic yield than patients with obscure-occult bleeding, presenting as IDA[72,83]. More factors associated with a higher diagnostic yield have been identified, including low hemoglobin measurements, transfusion need, older age and a short interval of less

Table 2 Comparison of different diagnostic modalities in obscure gastrointestinal bleeding

Ref.	Country	Design	No. of patients	Comparator	Yield of CE, (%)	Yield of Comparator, (%)	Significant difference? (yes/no)	CE superior? (yes/no)	Other
Triester *et al*[80]	United States	Meta-analysis and Systematic review	396	PE	63	28	Yes	Yes	NNT = 3 to yield one additional clinically significant finding with CE
			88	SB radiography (barium contrast and enteroclysis)	67	8	Yes	Yes	NNT = 3 to yield one additional clinically significant finding with CE
Leighton *et al*[82]	United States	Meta-analysis and Systematic review	396	PE	63	28	Yes	Yes	Yield of significant findings: CE = 56% *vs* PE = 26%, NNT = 3 to yield one additional clinically significant finding with CE
			88	Barium radiography	67	8	Yes	Yes	Yield of significant findings: CE = 42% *vs* SB barium radiography = 6%, NNT = 3 to yield one additional clinically significant finding with CE
			42	Intraoperative enteroscopy	83	83	No	No	
			17	Mesenteric angiography	47	53	No	No	
Chen *et al*[205]	China	Meta-analysis and Systematic review	277	DBE	61	56	No	No	CE was superior if no combination of oral + anal approach <-> DBE was superior when a combination of the two insertion approaches was done
Pasha *et al*[95]	United States	Meta-analysis and Systematic review	397	DBE	24	24	No	No	CE should be the initial diagnostic test for determining insertion route of DBE
Arakawa *et al*[76]	Japan	Retrospective Study	162	DBE	54	64	No	No	
Teshima *et al*[77]	Canada, The Netherlands	Meta-analysis and Systematic review	651	DBE	62	56	No	Yes	Yield of DBE after positive CE = 75.0% <-> yield after negative CE = 27.5%
Leung *et al*[206]	China	RCT	60	Mesenteric angiography	53	20	Yes	Yes	No significant difference in the long-term outcomes (transfusion need, hospitalization for rebleeding,mortality)
Wang *et al*[207]	China	Meta-analysis and Systematic review	279	CT	53	34	Yes	Yes	Complementary role to CE and can be used as a triage tool prior to DBE in evaluating OGIB

PE: Push enteroscopy; CE: Capsule endoscopy; SB: Small bowel; NNT: Number needed to treat; DBE: Double balloon enteroscopy; RCT: Randomized controlled trial.

than 3 d between admission and the CE procedure[84-88]. CE is recommended in all cases of OGIB because of its diagnostic value and its impact on further management. A study by Albert *et al*[75] found that CE was able to determine the therapy in 66% of the cases and led to an alteration in management in 32.3% of the cases. This is in line of previous studies, which reported that CE could alter subsequent management in 23%-66% of the cases[79,85,89-91]. Sidhu *et al*[84] found that this management alteration could be predicted by patient comorbidity or angiodysplasia findings on CE.

The reason why CE has been recommended as first-line examination tool over DBE after initial negative upper and lower endoscopies is its noninvasive nature and ease of use, which makes it well-tolerated and feasible in an outpatient setting[92]. Furthermore its ability to visualize the whole small bowel in more than 80%-85% of the cases[93,94] and the ability to determine the initial DBE approach makes it a helpful tool in OGIB diagnostics[92,95]. However, CE often fails to visualize lesions in the proximal small bowel, in a Roux-en-y loop and in patients presenting with diverticula[76].

If necessary, a CE procedure can be followed by a double balloon enteroscopy (DBE) procedure[72]. DBE is the only diagnostic tool showing a similar diagnostic yield for OGIB as VCE, as can be seen in Table 2. However, the DBE procedure is more invasive, can be time-consuming, requires training, needs sedation or general

anesthesia and can have a complication rate of up to 4.3% in therapeutic procedures as was reported by Mensink *et al*[96]. Moreover DBE is not always able to visualize the whole small bowel. A completion rate of only 62.5% was achieved in DBE, compared to 90.6% in CE as reported by Nakamura *et al*[94]. Yet, DBE is preferred over CE in patients requiring a biopsy or a therapeutic intervention such as argon plasma coagulation (APC). Also DBE tends to have an acceptable yield in patients with an initial negative CE and suspicion of a small bowel lesion[95,97], although it has been reported being much lower than the yield of DBE following a positive CE, respectively 28% and 75%[77].

Not only clinically, but also economically is CE recommended as first line investigation of OGIB. It has shown to be more cost-effective than DBE when only visualization of the small bowel is needed[98]. Negative CE investigations usually do not require further diagnostic work-up, which saves money in the long term, because reimbursement for CE is less than for DBE[93]. A mean cost-saving of €1738.07 was reported by Marmo *et al*[99] when CE was preferred over other modalities in OGIB and turned out to be positive. However, only reimbursement costs were evaluated, so the cost of the hospital and the personnel was not taken into account.

If a therapeutic intervention is needed with a probability of more than 25%, gastroenterologists should consider the use of DBE as initial therapeutic option to minimize costs[93]. Furthermore, cost equalization of DBE and CE was reached at 100 procedures for diagnostic DBE and 79 procedures for therapeutic DBE, which suggests that DBE is especially cost-effective in large-scale hospitals, with a substantial number of DBE procedures per year. Another study by Gerson *et al*[100] found that, regardless of the cost, DBE procedure was more cost-effective than CE-guided DBE procedure, because no additional costs were charged regarding further examinations and therapy could be given instantly. However, the workload for physicians would significantly increase if an initial DBE would be done and we may not forget that DBE is correlated with a higher rate of complications compared to CE. CE-guided DBE was associated with better outcomes in the long term because of fewer potential complications and fewer utilization of endoscopic resources. This can be explained by the high negative predictive value of CE, which leads to a reduction in the subsequent DBE procedures[92,100].

When CE is negative, the chance of rebleeding is low, so that further investigations can be deferred, even when a second test might be diagnostic[101-103]. Rebleeding was reported to be higher in CE-positive patients and patients using anticoagulants[103]. Nonetheless, gastroenterologists should consider close monitoring, alternative modalities in suspicious cases because the chance of rebleeding has been reported up to 28.4% and 35.3% during a median follow-up of respectively 23.7 mo and 31.7 mo[104,105]. Repeating the CE procedure however should only be considered if the bleeding presentation switches from occult to overt bleeding or the hemoglobin level drops with more than 4 g/dL[106]. Diagnostic yield of a repeated CE was reported to be between 35% and 75% and a subsequent management change was reported in 39% to 62.5% of the patients[107,108].

To conclude this chapter about OGIB, we have made a flow-chart to represent the current knowledge in this field. For this purpose we included the reviewed articles in previous flow charts[18,109] (Figure 3).

CD

Non-stricturing CD is the second main indication for CE. CD is a type of chronic IBD which may affect the whole gastrointestinal tract and lead to mucosal and transmural damage. Categorization of patients with CD is done based on the disease presentation: solely the small bowel (30%-35% of the patients), the small bowel and the large bowel (45%-50%) or only the large bowel (20%)[110]. So even though it primarily affects the terminal ileum, the ileocecal region and the large bowel, one third of the patients presents with only small bowel inflammation which challenges gastroenterologists to diagnose the disease. Traditionally small bowel involvement was diagnosed by radiological procedures, small bowel barium radiography, CT, colonoscopy with ileoscopy or enteroscopy. But with the invention of CE, new possibilities in CD diagnostics have become available.

CE can be very helpful in the diagnosis of new cases of Crohn and in the evaluation of known CD, with regard to the activity and extent of the disease. CE is reserved however for cases with unexplained symptoms, when other investigations remain inconclusive or when CE would affect the management of the patient[111]. So both in suspected as established CD, CE usually is performed third after a negative colonoscopy and ileoscopy, thereby replacing the traditional modalities. CE is considered positive for CD when more than 3 ulcerations are identified in the absence of NSAID use[111-113] or when 4 or more obvious clear ulcers, erosions, or a region with clear exudate and mucosal hyperemia and edema are seen[114].

Like in OGIB, CE also has shown a superior yield for detecting early inflammatory lesions in the small bowel comparing to all other modalities as can be seen in Table 3. The yield of CE in non-stricturing CD has been reported to be between 18% and 96%[81,95,115-119]. Triester *et al*[81] only found a significant difference in yield between CE and other modalities for diagnosing non-stricturing small bowel CD. However, a distinction should be made between suspected and established CD. The reported superior yield was only significant for evaluating established CD and was not reported for diagnosis of small bowel CD in patients with a suspected initial presentation of the disease. This was contradicted by Dionisio *et al*[115], who found that CE has a superior yield compared to small bowel radiography (SBR), CT enterography (CTE) and colonoscopy with ileoscopy in the diagnosis of suspected CD patients. Although the

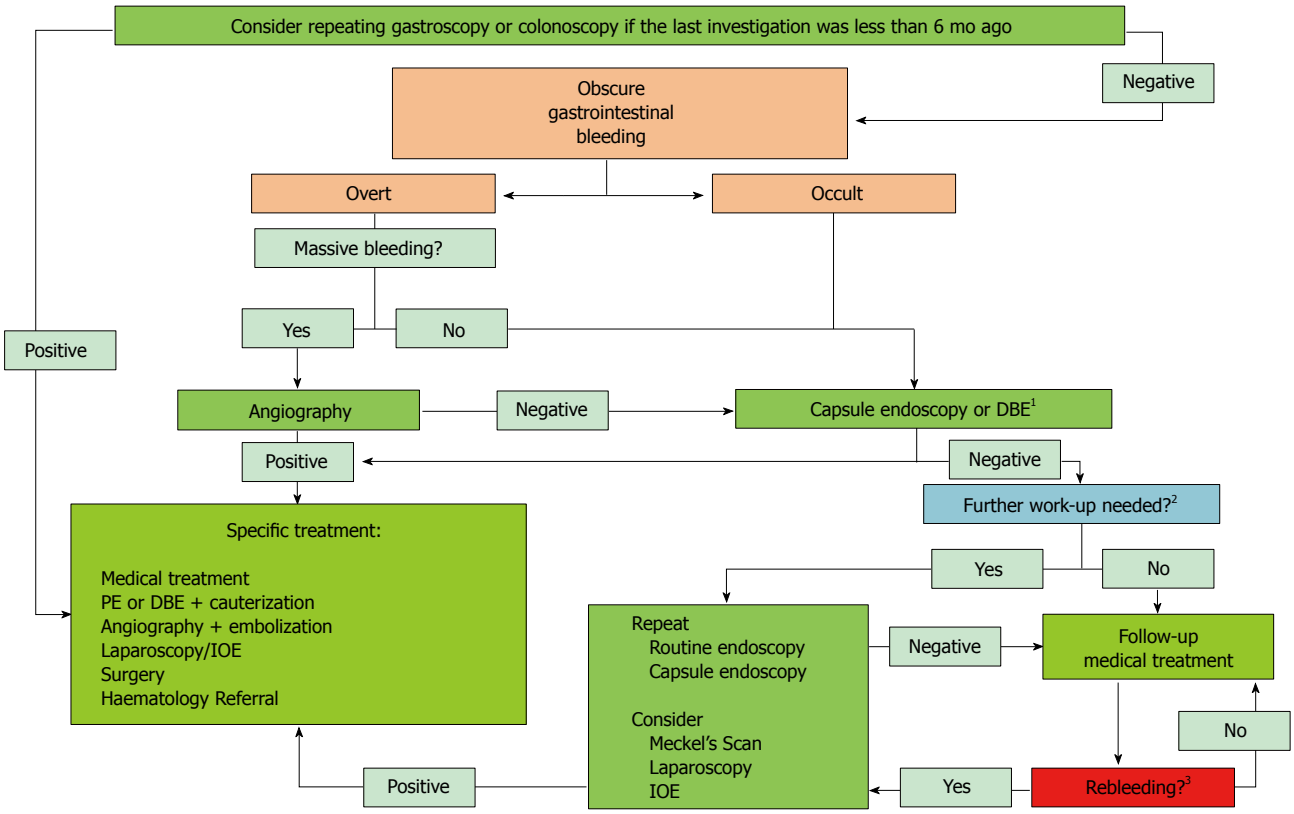


Figure 3 Recommended approaches for diagnosis and treatment of obscure gastrointestinal bleeding. [1]DBE is recommended in (1) patients requiring a biopsy or a therapeutic intervention (2) patients with an initial negative CE and suspicion of a small bowel lesion (3) large scale hospitals or (4) hospitals where CE is not available; [2]If a lesion is suspected, further work-up is needed; [3]Rebleeding was defined as a change from occult to overt bleeding or a hemoglobin level drop more than 4 g/dL. DBE: Double balloon enteroscopy; PE: Push enteroscopy; IOE: Intraoperative enteroscopy; Routine endoscopy: Uni/bidirectional endoscopy.

yield of CE in CD is high, the proportion of CD patients diagnosed with CE is rather low (0%-4%). Only in young patients presenting with abdominal pain plus diarrhea a 30% chance of diagnosing CD was achieved[114]. In established CD patients, CE was reported to be superior compared to SBR, CTE and PE, which was the same according to previous findings[115]. When compared to CT enterography and MR enterography, CE shows superior yields in the first two-thirds of the small bowel, but loses this superiority in the last portion of the small bowel by showing a yield similar to the comparators[120,121]. However, we may not forget that MR enterography is also capable of visualizing the small bowel surroundings, so that transmural and extra-intestinal manifestations can be diagnosed[122]. A recent study by Leighton *et al*[123] found that a combination of colonoscopy with ileoscopy and CE achieved a far more high yield than patients investigated with a combination of colonoscopy with ileoscopy and small-bowel follow-through (SBFT). They confirmed the role of CE as valuable third diagnostic option in diagnosis of suspected CD, when colonoscopy and ileoscopy turned out to be negative or inconclusive.

In patients with suspected CD, Girelli *et al*[119] found that, presuming a pre-test probability of CD of 50%, a positive CE was capable to raise the post-test probability up to 85% and if the CE was negative, it was capable to lower the probability to only 5%. In patients with established CD, the use of small bowel CE in monitoring therapy response is still a controversial issue. Many reports found that the clinical and biological response to treatment is not correlated with mucosal healing, which is monitored on CE, so it has not proven useful in this respect[124].

Caution should be taken when evaluating CEs positive for small bowel lesions. Because of the potential of CE to detect early lesions, CD-induced lesions are often non-specific and can be confused with NSAID-induced lesions. Both CD and NSAID-induced small bowel injury show endoscopically similar lesions and because of the inability of CE to take biopsies, the differential diagnosis remains inconclusive. Pathognomonic however for NSAID-induced lesions are the concentric diaphragmatic strictures in the ileum seen on endoscopy, which can lead to small bowel obstruction[125]. According to Doherty *et al*[126] the problem of false positive capsules also overestimates the incremental yield of CE compared to other modalities, necessitating a diagnostic golden standard to overcome the problem of premature CD diagnoses. Currently, there are two scores available to assess and monitor mucosal disease activity on CE. The CE CD Activity Index (CECDAI or Niv score) and the Lewis score are only recently developed and still have to prove their usefulness in standardizing the diagnosis of CD on CE before being widely accepted in clinical

Table 3 Comparison of different diagnostic modalities in Crohn's disease

Ref.	Country	Design	No. of patients	Comparator	Yield of CE, (%)	Yield of Comparator, (%)	Significant difference? (yes/no)	CE superior? (yes/no)	Other
Marmo *et al*[117]	Italy	RCT	31	SB radiography (enteroclysis)	71	26	Yes	Yes	Terminal ileum: yield 89% *vs* 37% Proximal SB: yield only 46% *vs* 13%
Chong *et al*[208]	Australia	Blinded prospective trial	43	SB enteroclysis	77	19	Yes	Yes	Results are in patients with a history of CD
				PE	77	14	Yes	Yes	
Triester *et al*[81]	United States	Meta-analysis and Systematic review	250	SB barium radiography	63	23	Yes	Yes	NNT = 3 to yield one additional diagnosis with CE
			114	Colonoscopy with ileoscopy	61	46	Yes	Yes	NNT = 7 to yield one additional diagnosis with CE
			93	CT enterography/CT enteroclysis	69	30	Yes	Yes	
			84	PE	46	8	Yes	Yes	
			18	MR enterography	72	50	No	Yes	
Solem *et al*[118]	United States	Blinded prospective trial	41	CT enterography	83	83	No	No	Specificity of CE (53%) was significantly lower than the other tests
				Colonoscopy with ileoscopy	83	74	No	Yes	
				Small bowel follow-through	83	65	No	Yes	
Pasha *et al*[95]	United States	Meta-analysis and Systematic review	343	DBE	18	16	No	No	
Dionisio *et al*[115]	United States	Meta-analysis and Systematic review	428	SB barium radiography	52	16	Yes	Yes	
			236	Colonoscopy with ileoscopy	47 (71)[1]	25 (36)	Yes	Yes	Suspected CD (Established CD)
			119	CT enterography	68 (71)	21 (39)	Yes	Yes	Suspected CD (Established CD)
			102	PE	66	9	Yes	Yes	Established CD
			123	MR enterography	55 (70)	45 (79)	No	Yes (no)	Suspected CD (Established CD)
Lu *et al*[116]	China	Retrospective Study	50	Colonoscopy with ileoscopy	96	66	Yes	Yes	Combination of two methods showed a higher yield, but no significant differences were reported between each two examinations
			34	CT enterography	96	85	Yes	Yes	
			39	Small bowel follow-through	96	67	Yes	Yes	

[1]Extra information between brackets is specific for Established Crohn's disease. PE: Push enteroscopy; CE: Capsule endoscopy; SB: Small bowel; NNT: Number needed to treat; DBE: Double balloon enteroscopy; RCT: Randomized controlled trial.

practice as an objective tool of mucosal inflammation measurement[127,128]. Although the yield of CE has been questioned by these diagnostic problems, CE still remains a valuable tool in the diagnosis of CD: a recent study by Hall *et al*[129] found a very high negative predictive value in the long term despite the questioned yield in patients with suspected CD, which makes it capable of safely ruling out suspected CD.

As mentioned before, capsule retention is especially feared in patients with CD because of possible strictures and stenosis. The reported 2.6% by Sharaf *et al*[130] has made small bowel imaging a standard exam previous to the CE procedure[19]. MR is a useful tool to asses patency of the small bowel[131]. Another possibility is the use of the previously discussed Pillcam PC (Given Imaging, Yoqneam, Israel), which indicates patency if the capsule is excreted intact or the scan has lost the RFID tag signal 30 h after ingestion[132], so the CE procedure can be done to evaluate the mucosal surface of the small bowel.

Cost analyses for CE in CD have been made and showed that colonoscopy with ileoscopy followed by a CT enterography was the most cost-effective choice

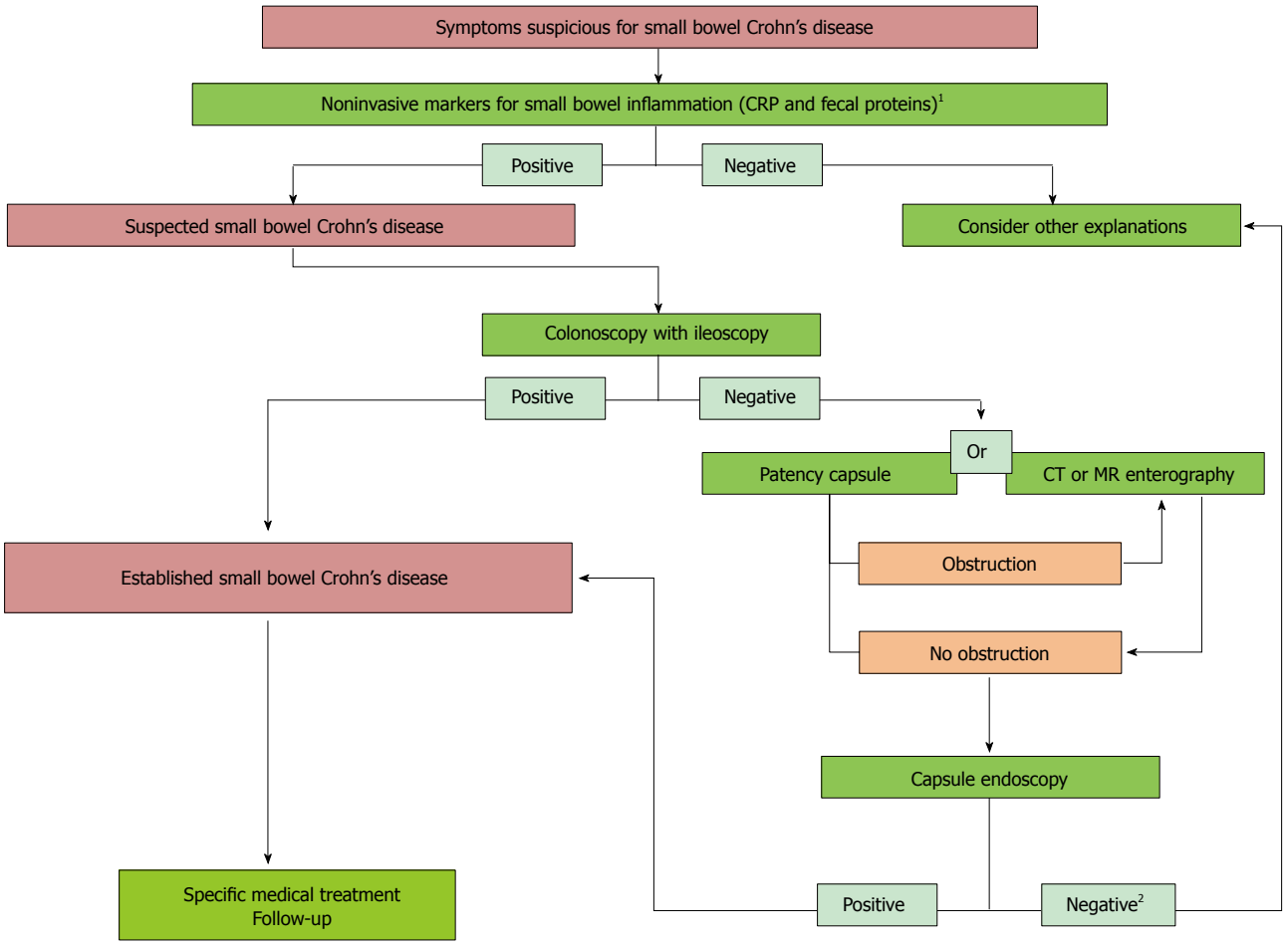


Figure 4 Recommended approaches for diagnosis and treatment of Crohn's disease. [1]Non-invasive markers have proven to be useful in giving baseline information about the presence of small bowel inflammation; [2]If capsule endoscopy (CE) is negative, Crohn's disease can be ruled out due to the high negative predictive value of CE. In that case, other explanations should be considered. CRP: C reactive protein.

among the different diagnostic options in patients suspected of CD[133]. Moreover, CE was proven to be not cost-effective as third diagnostic option, because of the high false positive rate, the diagnostic yield and the low pre-test probability of CD. Sharaf *et al*[130] confirmed these findings and concluded that CE is not a valuable option in patients with suspected CD. However, Leighton *et al*[134] found that CE did play a significant role in early diagnostics of CD, because it did not necessitate repeated procedures, physician visits and hospital stays, so direct costs could be reduced. Further investigation on this matter is needed.

In summary, CE has a superior diagnostic yield when compared to other modalities in suspected as well as established small intestinal CD. However, the question if this superior yield is due to false positive results remains unanswered. With the development of two scoring systems, this problem might be solved in the near future. Still, CE is a promising tool in CD diagnostics because of its capability to early diagnose small bowel lesions. We conclude with a flow chart based on the ICCE flowchart[131] and Mergener *et al*[109] with incorporation of new evidence[124,129] (Figure 4).

Surveillance of polyposis syndromes and detection of small bowel tumors

Small bowel tumors make up only 3%-6% of the gastrointestinal neoplasm cases despite the 90% of the gastrointestinal tract surface the small bowel covers, which makes it a difficult entity to diagnose[135,136]. The most frequently observed tumors are adenocarcinoma, gastrointestinal stromal tumor, carcinoid, lymphoma and sarcoma[137-140]. Symptoms are rather unspecific and include anaemia or overt OGIB and later abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, weight loss and anorexia[141,142]. Thereby tumors are mostly found on CE or DBE when investigating patients with OGIB[80,139,140,143]. A study by Singeap *et al*[137] reported a detection rate for small bowel tumors of 4.9% in patients presenting with OGIB or other nonspecific symptoms. Other studies have found a tumor detection rate of 6%-12% on CEs done for OGIB[144]. The insidious process often is responsible for the delayed diagnosis of a patient, which impacts the further management of the patient[145]. Fast tumor detection is therefore very important, since management can be changed accordingly and outcomes can be improved even in malignant lesions if metastasis is

absent[146]. Small bowel tumors can be benign, potentially malignant, malignant or metastatic. However the majority, 60%, of these tumors are malignant[144], and differentiation between benignant and malignant cannot be made on CE. Tumors mostly appear as masses or polyps, but also can present as ulcers and stenoses in a minority of the cases. Hereditary polyposis syndromes like Familial Adenomatous Polyposis (FAP) and Peutz-Jeghers Syndrome (PJS), are another entity and apart from the colon polyposis, patients often develop benignant small bowel pathology with a high tendency to evolve into cancer[147].

CE was evaluated for small bowel tumors and hereditary polyposis syndromes and turned out to be a valuable diagnostic tool[148,149]. The pooled detection rate of CE was 55.9%[19]. Therefore, In patients with suspected small bowel tumors, CE can be the first choice in diagnostics[137]. In a study by Schulmann *et al*[147] it was stated that CE was capable of detecting small bowel polyposis, located in the distal jejunum and ileum beyond the reach of PE. These polyps could subsequently be removed by DBE, so surgery was avoided. However, most FAP patients with distal polyposis also presented with proximal polyposis, which was equally detected by CE as well as PE. Proximal jejunal polyposis is significantly correlated with the presence and severity of duodenal disease, which is one of the main locations for adenocarcinoma and subsequent mortality. Because CE was capable of detecting proximal small bowel polyposis and given its superior sensitivity and non-invasive nature, it was recommended as a surveillance tool in a subgroup of FAP patients with severe duodenal polyposis[147]. Duodenal polyposis itself is difficult to detect by CE, due to the rapid transit of the capsule in this part of the gastrointestinal tract. Another study by Plum *et al*[150] confirmed the superiority of CE compared to other modalities such as PE, ileoscopy and enteroclysis in patients with FAP. However, they also stressed on the fact that CE did not replace the other modalities, because CE sometimes missed lesions and did not manage to precisely localize the small bowel lesions. Also a study by Wong *et al*[151] confirmed the fact that CE could underestimate the number of small bowel polyps in FAP and a review by Koornstra[152] stated that CE cannot totally replace standard endoscopy in the surveillance of the proximal small bowel. A tool to overcome missed lesions might be the recently developed CICE tool, which enhances the contrast of the CE images and thereby improves the visibility in patients with small bowel polyposis. Although further evaluation is needed, a first trial showed that half of the adenomatous polyps could be better visualized and hamartomatous polyposis was better visible[153].

In PJS, CE was capable of detecting lesions with direct impact on further management. CE is the most accurate diagnostic tool to detect small bowel polyposis throughout the whole small bowel and can be seen as a safe alternative for the traditional modalities, such as PE and MR enteroclysis used in PJS and FAP[147]. The superiority of CE over MR enterography was also confirmed by Liao *et al*[19] who found that CE was capable of detecting smaller small bowel lesions. Urgesi *et al*[143] stated that CE could detect more lesions than the traditional endoscopy and radiological imaging in patients suspected for small bowel tumors. They concluded that CE played an important role in the diagnostic work-up of these patients[143]. Similarly another very recent study by Urquhart *et al*[154] found that CE was able to identify significantly more small bowel polyps compared with MRE in patients with PJS. Furthermore, Rahmi *et al*[155] found that CE was also useful in planning the DBE approach in patients in need of polypectomy. DBE, which achieves a similar yield as CE, is useful when biopsy, exact pre-operative localization or local therapy, such as stenting or balloon dilatation is needed[156].

CE also has its limitations in the detection of small bowel tumors. First of all it is not useful in an emergency setting, such as obstruction and peritonitis, because of the risk of capsule retention[145]. Furthermore, CE is not capable of treating locally or taking biopsies, needed to differentiate between benignant and malignant[157]. Finally CE is not able to differentiate a mucosal bulge from a smooth-walled tumor. To overcome the latter problem, the scoring system SPICE (Smooth, Protruding lesion Index on CE) has been developed. A score greater than 2 is suggestive of small bowel malignancy, but further validation is needed[158].

Just like in CD, the risk of capsule retention is present. Yet the rate is lower in patients with intestinal tumors compared to patients with CD[19]. Moreover, Bailey *et al*[146] stated that obstructions due to neoplasms were a positive complication because, since the tumor anyway needed to be treated by enteroscopy or surgery, the impacted capsule could serve as a guide. Like in CD, if the patient is suspicious for obstruction, imaging should be done before CE. Management of malignant small bowel tumors is primarily surgical. In selected cases, this can be performed laparoscopically. Adjuvant chemotherapy and radiotherapy may be needed, depending on the histology of the tumor[135].

We can conclude by stating that CE is a diagnostic tool with a big value regarding its yield in diagnosis and surveillance of small bowel tumors/polyps. However, it is complementary to the traditional modalities and can not substitute them. CE is recommended third after negative bidirectional endoscopy in patients with OGIB or other unspecific symptoms indicating a possible small bowel tumor. It can be used first as a complementary diagnostic tool in patients with established hereditary polyposis syndromes. We summarized the evidence in two flow-charts based on the Consensus statements for small–bowel CE, 2006/2007 by Mergener *et al*[109] and a study by Plum *et al*[150] (Figures 5 and 6).

NSAID side-effects

NSAIDs can inflict injury along the whole gastrointestinal tract, when used for a prolonged time. Although many

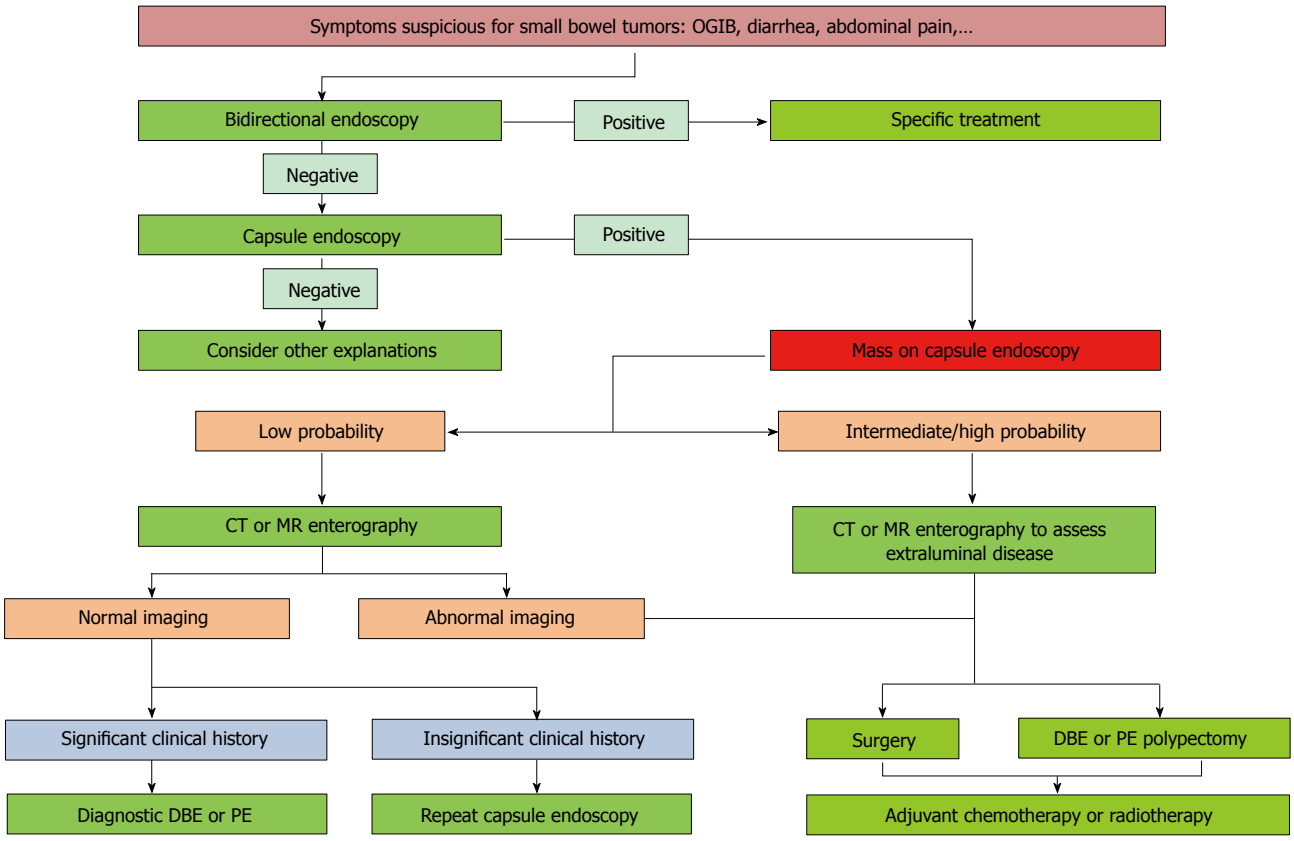


Figure 5 Recommended approaches for diagnosis and treatment of small bowel tumors. DBE: Double balloon enteroscopy; PE: Push enteroscopy; OGIB: Obscure gastrointestinal bleeding.

publications have emphasized on the incidence of upper gastrointestinal lesions, fewer have mentioned lower gastrointestinal ones. However, as mentioned before, NSAIDs can also induce small bowel lesions, which can be observed on CE. In fact, these lesions are far more common than the NSAID-induced gastropathy[159]. Furthermore, complications in the lower gastrointestinal tract, such as perforation, bleeding, or obstruction are currently increasing while upper GI complications are decreasing[160], which necessitates the need of small bowel diagnostics in the field of NSAID side-effects.

In seventy percent of the patients using NSAIDs continuously, mucosal damage of the small intestine has been reported on CE or DBE[161,162]. Even a two-week NSAID-regimen with slow-release diclofenac resulted already in macroscopic injury of the small intestine in 68%-75% of the volunteers[163]. Different types of lesions have been observed ranging from mucosal redness and multiple petechiae to erosions, ulcers, loss of villi, diaphragm-like strictures, which are pathognomonic for NSAID-induced enteropathy, and even severe bleeding[164,165]. Most symptomatic patients present with OGIB with or without obstruction symptoms and are accordingly diagnosed[166,167].

Both CE and DBE have been evaluated for NSAID-induced lesions. They show a similar yield of 60% in diagnosis[166,168]. CE however is preferred for screening of NSAID-induced lesions and evaluation of further treatment because of its non-invasive character. DBE on the other hand is the first choice in patients suspicious of strictures. NSAID-use has been recognized as a risk factor for capsule retention and CE should therefore be avoided in these patients[19]. Furthermore DBE is preferred when further examination of the lesion, endoscopic or histologically, is needed or when local therapy has to be given, such as balloon dilatation of a stricture or endoscopic coagulation, clipping or injection of the bleeding site. Balloon dilatation of a stricture seems to be safe, since the muscularis propria remains intact and perforation is subsequently rarely observed[156]. A recent study by Tacheci *et al*[169] confirmed the high sensitivity of CE and further stated that subclinical small bowel damage also could be observed on CE. If NSAID enteropathy is found on CE or DBE, further investigation can be done using other modalities such as radiological examination, the permeability test, scintigraphy, the fecal excretion with ^{111}In white blood cells and measurement of the calprotectin concentration in the feces[164].

Just like in CD, scoring systems are available to classify lesions and to consider and evaluate further treatment[127,161,163,168]. However, no standard scoring system is thoroughly evaluated. Different therapeutic options are available. The first choice of therapy is a discontinuation in the use of NSAIDs, which in most cases is not possible due to the underlying pathology[161]. Cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) selective inhibitors, prostaglandin derivatives, a combination of NSAIDs and

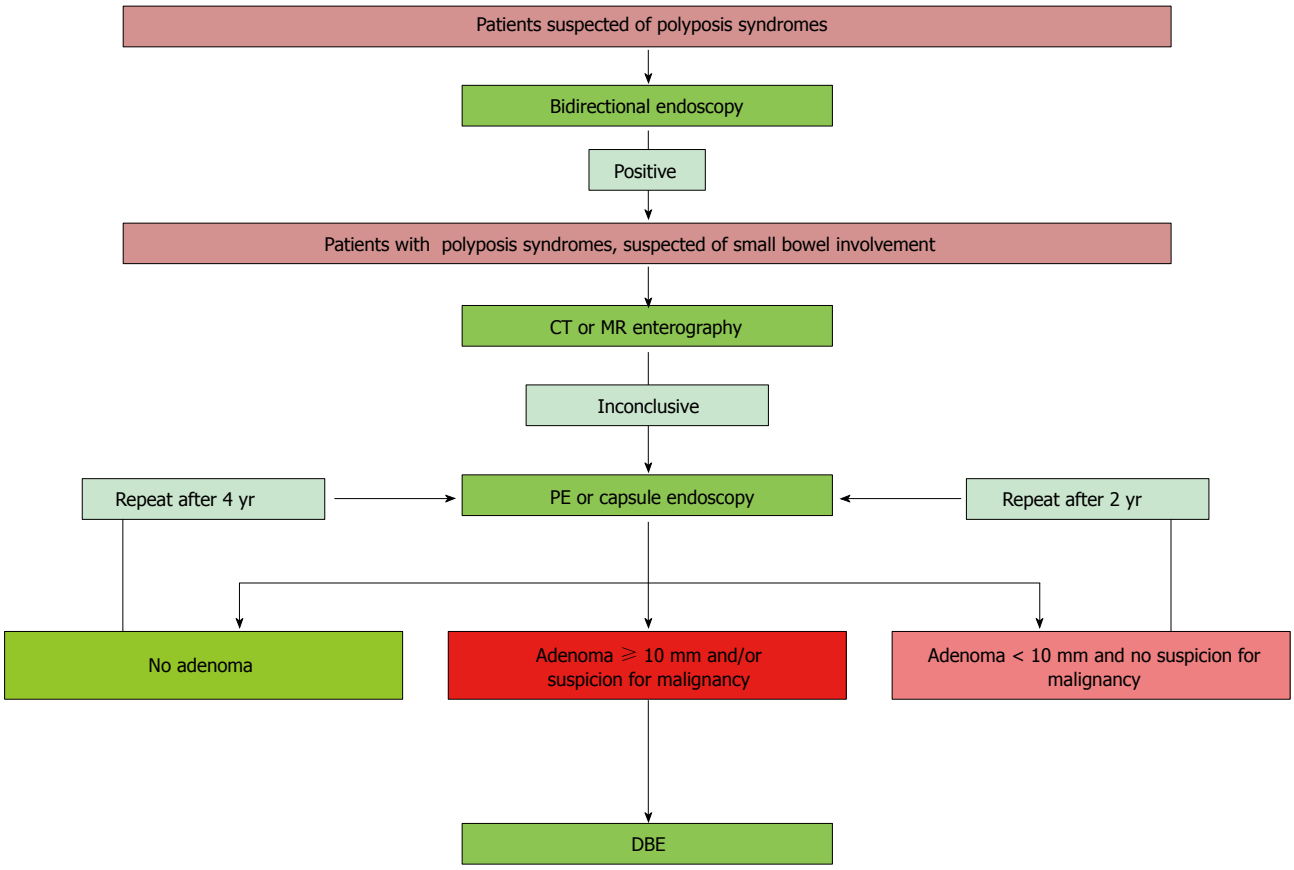


Figure 6 Recommended approaches or diagnosis of small bowel hereditary polyposis. DBE: Double balloon enteroscopy; PE: Push enteroscopy.

phosphatidylcholine, cytoprotective drugs and probiotics are all useful for the treatment of NSAID-induced small intestinal injuries[159]. Yet controversy remains around the use of selective COX-2 agents. A trial by Goldstein *et al*[170] reported that a 2-wk regimen of selective COX-2 agents caused fewer small intestine injuries than treatment with a nonspecific NSAID. This was confirmed in a big RCT by Chan *et al*[171]. However, Maiden *et al*[172] showed that COX-2 selective inhibitors caused the same amount of small bowel damage as long-term NSAIDs, which is interesting given the fact that they affect the gastroduodenal mucosa to a lesser extent[170]. So COX-2 might play a significant role in the maintenance of the small bowel integrity. We can conclude that it remains unclear whether selective COX-2 inhibitors truly prevent NSAID-induced enteropathy.

Also chronic Low-dose aspirin (LDA) users are at risk of small bowel enteropathy. The phenomenon was first described by Leung *et al*[171] in 2007 and the study by Endo *et al*[165] was the first to report the characteristics of the small bowel damage associated with long-term LDA use. The use of LDA however was less harmful than other types of NSAIDs[166]. These findings may have implications on treatment of the large group of patients requiring anti-inflammatory or antithrombotic drugs.

Celiac disease

Celiac disease is caused by an chronic auto-immune response of the intestines to gliadins in the diet and occurs in approximately 1% of the population in genetically susceptible persons[174]. It is characterized by duodenal folds, scalloping of folds, mucosal fissures, crevices or grooves, visible submucosal vessels, micronodules in the duodenal bulb and a mosaic pattern in the small bowel mucosa[175]. The lesions are visible on CE, which makes CE therefore a perfect tool to assess small bowel damage in these patients. In a large meta-analysis by Rokkas *et al*[176] sensitivity and specificity of CE in celiac disease have been reported up to 89% and 95% respectively. This was similar to a previous meta-analysis by El-Matary *et al*[177] which reported a sensitivity of 83% and a specificity of 98%. However, to confirm celiac disease in patients with positive serologic markers, a biopsy is needed, which is not possible with the current capsules. Therefore, the gold standard for the diagnosis of celiac disease remains the histological findings of a small bowel specimen obtained through gastroduodenoscopy.

The main indications to use CE are serological positive patients, who are unwilling to undergo gastroduodenoscopy or patients with antibody-negative villous atrophy. The latter group showed a higher yield on CE, compared with CE in serological positive patients with biopsy-proven celiac disease and persisting symptoms as was found by Kurien *et al*[178]. Also in patients with non-responsive celiac disease, defined by persistent or recurrent symptoms under treatment with a gluten-free diet, CE showed to be of use to detect

complications, such as multiple erosions, ulcerations, ulcerative jejunitis and adenocarcinoma[179]. Tennyson *et al*[180] confirmed these findings, but emphasized that CE was not a necessary tool in the evaluation of non-responsive celiac disease when no alarm symptoms are present, such as weight loss and abdominal pain, or when no loss of T-cell antigens on intraepithelial lymphocytes or loss of clonality of the T-cell receptor gene was observed. In the latter situations, a combination of CE and CT or MR enterography should be performed. In all other cases, upper gastroduodenoscopy with biopsy remains the gold standard. A recent study by Van Weyenberg *et al*[181] found similar results stating that CE could be used in patients with non-responsive celiac disease to identify the cases who are at risk of complications. CE might also be useful in the follow-up of patients with celiac disease under treatment with a gluten-free diet, regarding mucosal healing, because the follow-up of duodenal histology is not representative for the mucosal healing more distally[182]. Finally, Akin *et al*[183] confirmed other authors by stating that CE was useful as an alternative to duodenal biopsy in patients unable or unwilling to undergo gastroduodenoscopy and further stated that CE could be of use in the diagnosis of celiac disease in elderly patients with unspecific symptoms.

In conclusion, gastroduodenoscopy remains the diagnostic tool of choice for celiac disease, but CE shows to be a useful adjunctive tool in specific situations.

UPCOMING CHALLENGES

To conclude this paper about the current knowledge of CE, we would like to offer an insight in its bright future. Since its release in 2001, optics, battery life, visualization and software have been improved, with consequences on yield, completion rate and reading time. We have already discussed some technological advances in CE, but we will now shortly focus on future expectations of this technology.

One major field of advancement will be the maneuverability. If a capsule endoscope would be steerable and could approach a site of interest, this could be a big step forward in the diagnosis and treatment of diseases of the whole gastrointestinal tract. With efficient movement, battery life could sustain during movement through the whole gastrointestinal tract and thereby could increase completion rate. Various studies have been done and many prototype active capsules, using different locomotion techniques are currently under investigation for human use[184-188]. However, in the near future, remote manipulation using magnetic forces will be the first to be commercially available. These capsules contain a magnet, which can then be mobilized with an externally handled magnetic paddle or with a joystick. Perspective of the camera also can be adjusted with this magnet, rendering the desired image[189]. Swain *et al*[190] was the first to document the use of a magnetic field to guide a capsule through the human oesophagus and stomach. Since this article, many studies have followed, especially focusing on investigation of the stomach[191-194]. To overcome the problem of capsule impaction and to improve mucosal visualization, especially in the colon, insufflation techniques have recently been described by several authors using a capsule with a magnetic controlled drug release system to create a basic chemical reaction forming CO_2 in the lumen[195-197]. Another very interesting topic is a novel wireless platform able to measure and locate the force opposing capsule motion as a reflection of the gastrointestinal tract resistance[198]. It is the first platform for magnetic control of CEs that implemented this intermagnetic force measurement feature.

Another advancement might be the availability of a controlled drug release feature. This could help gastroenterologists in the local treatment of various gastrointestinal diseases, such as medical treatment of CD or even hemostasis in OGIB. Only one study introduced a capsule able to microposition a needle and to deliver 1 mL of a targeted medication, while resisting peristalsis with its holding mechanism[199].

The inability of taking biopsies is a third challenge CE faces. Together with an accurate maneuverability, this could enable CE to completely take the place of DBE in diagnostic and even therapeutic endoscopy of the small bowel. In 2008, Valdastri *et al*[200] was the first to successfully report an *in vivo* experiment with a capsule with built-in clip-releasing mechanism. The VECTOR project by the European Commission is currently developing a capsule for diagnosis and treatment of gastrointestinal cancer[201]. Another study also investigated the use of a large number of thermo-sensitive microgrippers in CE for this purpose of grabbing and retrieving tissue samples, which showed promising results[202].

Finally, to end this paper, we would like to reflect on the environmental consequences of capsule endoscopies, a subject that will become more important in the future, given the growing importance of CE. Although the ASGE consensus states that the capsule is "disposable and designed to be excreted"[3], considerations around this topic should be made, since the capsule contains many particles with potential biohazards[203]. Pezzoli *et al*[204] was the first to publish a small article on this matter in 2011. They found that it was possible, after retrieval and cleaning, to reactivate used capsules with a 10 min procedure and a new battery cost of only 2 euro. Recycled capsules could then be given a second life in, *e.g.*, veterinary procedures[205].

CONCLUSION

This paper gives a brief but complete overview on small bowel CE anno 2014. As the technology is still evolving and new insights are still being published every year, we emphasize that healthcare-providers should continue to monitor the medical literature for recent data, in order to provide the best evidence-based care for their patients.

REFERENCES

1 **Iddan G**, Meron G, Glukhovsky A, Swain P. Wireless capsule endoscopy. *Nature* 2000; **405**: 417 [PMID: 10839527 DOI: 10.1038/35013140]
2 **Delvaux M**, Gay G. Capsule endoscopy: technique and indications. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2008; **22**: 813-837 [PMID: 18790434 DOI: 10.1016/j.bpg.2008.06.003]
3 **Wang A**, Banerjee S, Barth BA, Bhat YM, Chauhan S, Gottlieb KT, Konda V, Maple JT, Murad F, Pfau PR, Pleskow DK, Siddiqui UD, Tokar JL, Rodriguez SA. Wireless capsule endoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **78**: 805-815 [PMID: 24119509 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.06.026]
4 **Pan G**, Wang L. Swallowable wireless capsule endoscopy: progress and technical challenges. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2012; **2012**: 841691 [PMID: 22253621 DOI: 10.1155/2012/841691]
5 **Metzger YC**, Adler SN, Shitrit ABG, Koslowsky B, Bjarnason I. Comparison of a new PillCam™ SB2 video capsule versus the standard PillCam™ SB for detection of small bowel disease. *Medical Imaging* 2009; **2**: 7-11
6 **Liao Z**, Gao R, Li F, Xu C, Zhou Y, Wang JS, Li ZS. Fields of applications, diagnostic yields and findings of OMOM capsule endoscopy in 2400 Chinese patients. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 2669-2676 [PMID: 20518090]
7 **Li CY**, Zhang BL, Chen CX, Li YM. OMOM capsule endoscopy in diagnosis of small bowel disease. *J Zhejiang Univ Sci B* 2008; **9**: 857-862 [PMID: 18988304 DOI: 10.1631/jzus.B0820034]
8 **Koulaouzidis A**, Rondonotti E, Karargyris A. Small-bowel capsule endoscopy: a ten-point contemporary review. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 3726-3746 [PMID: 23840112 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i24.3726]
9 **Connor A**, Tolan D, Hughes S, Carr N, Tomson C. Consensus guidelines for the safe prescription and administration of oral bowel-cleansing agents. *Gut* 2012; **61**: 1525-1532 [PMID: 22842619 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2011-300861]
10 **Kotwal VS**, Attar BM, Gupta S, Agarwal R. Should bowel preparation, antifoaming agents, or prokinetics be used before video capsule endoscopy? A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **26**: 137-145 [PMID: 24220156 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e328365b9d4]
11 **Kantianis A**, Karagiannis S, Liatsos C, Galanis P, Psilopoulos D, Tenta R, Kalantzis N, Mavrogiannis C. Comparison of two schemes of small bowel preparation for capsule endoscopy with polyethylene glycol: a prospective, randomized single-blind study. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **21**: 1140-1144 [PMID: 19757514]
12 **Bossa F**, Cocomazzi G, Valvano MR, Andriulli A, Annese V. Detection of abnormal lesions recorded by capsule endoscopy. A prospective study comparing endoscopist's and nurse's accuracy. *Dig Liver Dis* 2006; **38**: 599-602 [PMID: 16750944 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2006.03.019]
13 **Dokoutsidou H**, Karagiannis S, Giannakoulopoulou E, Galanis P, Kyriakos N, Liatsos C, Faiss S, Mavrogiannis C. A study comparing an endoscopy nurse and an endoscopy physician in capsule endoscopy interpretation. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **23**: 166-170 [PMID: 21287720]
14 **Shiotani A**, Honda K, Kawakami M, Kimura Y, Yamanaka Y, Fujita M, Matsumoto H, Tarumi K, Manabe N, Haruma K. Analysis of small-bowel capsule endoscopy reading by using Quickview mode: training assistants for reading may produce a high diagnostic yield and save time for physicians. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2012; **46**: e92-e95 [PMID: 22495816 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e31824fff94]
15 **Koulaouzidis A**, Smirnidis A, Douglas S, Plevris JN. QuickView in small-bowel capsule endoscopy is useful in certain clinical settings, but QuickView with Blue Mode is of no additional benefit. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **24**: 1099-1104 [PMID: 22668872 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e32835563ab]
16 **Imagawa H**, Oka S, Tanaka S, Noda I, Higashiyama M, Sanomura Y, Shishido T, Yoshida S, Chayama K. Improved detectability of small-bowel lesions via capsule endoscopy with computed virtual chromoendoscopy: a pilot study. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2011; **46**: 1133-1137 [PMID: 21619482 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2011.584899]
17 **Krystallis C**, Koulaouzidis A, Douglas S, Plevris JN. Chromoendoscopy in small bowel capsule endoscopy: Blue mode or Fuji Intelligent Colour Enhancement? *Dig Liver Dis* 2011; **43**: 953-957 [PMID: 21893436 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2011.07.018]
18 **Cave D**, Legnani P, de Franchis R, Lewis BS. ICCE consensus for capsule retention. *Endoscopy* 2005; **37**: 1065-1067 [PMID: 16189792 DOI: 10.1055/s-2005-870264]
19 **Liao Z**, Gao R, Xu C, Li ZS. Indications and detection, completion, and retention rates of small-bowel capsule endoscopy: a systematic review. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **71**: 280-286 [PMID: 20152309 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2009.09.031]
20 **Karagiannis S**, Faiss S, Mavrogiannis C. Capsule retention: a feared complication of wireless capsule endoscopy. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2009; **44**: 1158-1165 [PMID: 19606392 DOI: 10.1080/00365520903132039]
21 **Bakhshi GD**, Tayade MB, Jadhav KV, Choure DD, Mane NL, Patil SR. Retention of an endoscopic capsule. *J Minim Access Surg* 2014; **10**: 163-165 [PMID: 25013337 DOI: 10.4103/0972-9941.134886]
22 **Höög CM**, Bark LÅ, Arkani J, Gorsetman J, Broström O, Sjöqvist U. Capsule retentions and incomplete capsule endoscopy examinations: an analysis of 2300 examinations. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2012; **2012**: 518718 [PMID: 21969823 DOI: 10.1155/2012/518718]
23 **Cheifetz AS**, Kornbluth AA, Legnani P, Schmelkin I, Brown A, Lichtiger S, Lewis BS. The risk of retention of the capsule endoscope in patients with known or suspected Crohn's disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 2218-2222 [PMID: 16848804 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00761.x]
24 **Ladas SD**, Triantafyllou K, Spada C, Riccioni ME, Rey JF, Niv Y, Delvaux M, de Franchis R, Costamagna G. European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy (ESGE): recommendations (2009) on clinical use of video capsule endoscopy to investigate small-bowel, esophageal and colonic diseases. *Endoscopy* 2010; **42**: 220-227 [PMID: 20195992 DOI: 10.1055/s-0029-1243968]
25 **Cheifetz AS**, Lewis BS. Capsule endoscopy retention: is it a complication? *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2006; **40**: 688-691 [PMID: 16940879]
26 **Roorda AK**, Kupec JT, Ostrinsky Y, Shamma'a JM, Goebel SU, Sundaram U. Endoscopic approach to capsule endoscope retention. *Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **4**: 713-721 [PMID: 21108591 DOI: 10.1586/egh.10.80]
27 **Van Weyenberg SJ**, Van Turenhout ST, Bouma G, Van Waesberghe JH, Van der Peet DL, Mulder CJ, Jacobs MA. Double-balloon endoscopy as the primary method for small-bowel video capsule endoscope retrieval. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **71**: 535-541 [PMID: 20189512 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2009.10.029]
28 **Repici A**, Barbon V, De Angelis C, Luigiano C, De Caro G, Hervoso C, Danese S, Preatoni P, Pagano N, Comunale S, Pennazio M, Rizzetto M. Acute small-bowel perforation secondary to capsule endoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **67**: 180-183 [PMID: 17981271 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.05.044]
29 **Parikh DA**, Parikh JA, Albers GC, Chandler CF. Acute small bowel perforation after wireless capsule endoscopy in a patient with Crohn's disease: a case report. *Cases J* 2009; **2**: 7607 [PMID: 19830002 DOI: 10.4076/1757-1626-2-7607]
30 **Palmer JS**, Marenah K, El Madani F, Jain K, Gupta S. Small bowel perforation following capsule endoscopy: a case report. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl* 2011; **93**: e69-e70 [PMID: 21929888 DOI: 10.1308/147870811X590829]
31 **Um S**, Poblete H, Zavotsky J. Small bowel perforation caused

by an impacted endocapsule. *Endoscopy* 2008; **40** Suppl 2: E122-E123 [PMID: 18633864 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-995694]
32 **Gonzalez Carro P**, Picazo Yuste J, Fernández Díez S, Pérez Roldán F, Roncero García-Escribano O. Intestinal perforation due to retained wireless capsule endoscope. *Endoscopy* 2005; **37**: 684 [PMID: 16010621 DOI: 10.1055/s-2005-861424]
33 **Dubner S**, Dubner Y, Gallino S, Spallone L, Zagalsky D, Rubio H, Zimmerman J, Goldin E. Electromagnetic interference with implantable cardiac pacemakers by video capsule. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2005; **61**: 250-254 [PMID: 15729234]
34 **Leighton JA**, Sharma VK, Srivathsan K, Heigh RI, McWane TL, Post JK, Robinson SR, Bazzell JL, Fleischer DE. Safety of capsule endoscopy in patients with pacemakers. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2004; **59**: 567-569 [PMID: 15044901]
35 **Daas AY**, Small MB, Pinkas H, Brady PG. Safety of conventional and wireless capsule endoscopy in patients supported with nonpulsatile axial flow Heart-Mate II left ventricular assist device. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 379-382 [PMID: 18582876 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.03.1077]
36 **Fenkel JM**, Grasso MA, Goldberg EM, Feller ED. Capsule endoscopy is safe in patients with pulsatile Novacor PC left ventricular assist device. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2007; **65**: 559-60; author reply 560 [PMID: 17321277 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2006.11.029]
37 **Guyomar Y**, Vandeville L, Heuls S, Coviaux F, Graux P, Cornaert P, Filoche B. Interference between pacemaker and video capsule endoscopy. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol* 2004; **27**: 1329-1330 [PMID: 15461730 DOI: 10.1111/j.1540-8159.2004.00631.x]
38 **Payeras G**, Piqueras J, Moreno VJ, Cabrera A, Menéndez D, Jiménez R. Effects of capsule endoscopy on cardiac pacemakers. *Endoscopy* 2005; **37**: 1181-1185 [PMID: 16329014 DOI: 10.1055/s-2005-870558]
39 **Stanich PP**, Kleinman B, Betkerur K, Mehta Oza N, Porter K, Meyer MM. Video capsule endoscopy is successful and effective in outpatients with implantable cardiac devices. *Dig Endosc* 2014; **26**: 726-730 [PMID: 24673381 DOI: 10.1111/den.12288]
40 **Cuschieri JR**, Osman MN, Wong RC, Chak A, Isenberg GA. Small bowel capsule endoscopy in patients with cardiac pacemakers and implantable cardioverter defibrillators: Outcome analysis using telemetry review. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **4**: 87-93 [PMID: 22442746 DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v4.i3.87]
41 **Bandorski D**, Jakobs R, Brück M, Hoeltgen R, Wieczorek M, Keuchel M. Capsule Endoscopy in Patients with Cardiac Pacemakers and Implantable Cardioverter Defibrillators: (Re)evaluation of the Current State in Germany, Austria, and Switzerland 2010. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2012; **2012**: 717408 [PMID: 22253620 DOI: 10.1155/2012/717408]
42 **Dubner S**, Dubner Y, Rubio H, Goldin E. Electromagnetic interference from wireless video-capsule endoscopy on implantable cardioverter-defibrillators. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol* 2007; **30**: 472-475 [PMID: 17437569 DOI: 10.1111/j.1540-8159.2007.00695.x]
43 **Harris LA**, Hansel SL, Rajan E, Srivathsan K, Rea R, Crowell MD, Fleischer DE, Pasha SF, Gurudu SR, Heigh RI, Shiff AD, Post JK, Leighton JA. Capsule Endoscopy in Patients with Implantable Electromedical Devices is Safe. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2013; **2013**: 959234 [PMID: 23710168 DOI: 10.1155/2013/959234]
44 **Lucendo AJ**, González-Castillo S, Fernández-Fuente M, De Rezende LC. Tracheal aspiration of a capsule endoscope: a new case report and literature compilation of an increasingly reported complication. *Dig Dis Sci* 2011; **56**: 2758-2762 [PMID: 21409372 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-011-1666-2]
45 **Pezzoli A**, Fusetti N, Carella A, Gullini S. Asymptomatic bronchial aspiration and prolonged retention of a capsule endoscope: a case report. *J Med Case Rep* 2011; **5**: 341 [PMID: 21810229 DOI: 10.1186/1752-1947-5-341]
46 **Ding NS**, Hair C, De Cruz P, Watson J. Education and Imaging. Gastrointestinal: symptomatic bronchial aspiration of capsule endoscope - a significant complication. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **28**: 761 [PMID: 23614341 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.12173]
47 **Parker C**, Davison C, Panter S. Tracheal aspiration of a capsule endoscope: not always a benign event. *Dig Dis Sci* 2012; **57**: 1727-1728 [PMID: 22526588 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-012-2173-9]
48 **Despott EJ**, O'Rourke A, Anikin V, Davison C, Panter S, Bromley J, Plaice J, Corbett M, Fraser C. Tracheal aspiration of capsule endoscopes: detection, management, and susceptibility. *Dig Dis Sci* 2012; **57**: 1973-1974 [PMID: 22618576 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-012-2144-1]
49 **Koulaouzidis A**, Douglas S, Plevris JN. Tracheal aspiration of capsule endoscopes: completing a cases compilation. *Dig Dis Sci* 2011; **56**: 3101-3102 [PMID: 21516324 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-011-1704-0]
50 **Park SC**, Chun HJ, Kim ES, Keum B, Seo YS, Kim YS, Jeen YT, Lee HS, Um SH, Kim CD, Ryu HS. Sensitivity of the suspected blood indicator: an experimental study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 4169-4174 [PMID: 22919250 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i31.4169]
51 **Liangpunsakul S**, Mays L, Rex DK. Performance of Given suspected blood indicator. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 2676-2678 [PMID: 14687816 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2003.08731.x]
52 **Signorelli C**, Villa F, Rondonotti E, Abbiati C, Beccari G, de Franchis R. Sensitivity and specificity of the suspected blood identification system in video capsule enteroscopy. *Endoscopy* 2005; **37**: 1170-1173 [PMID: 16329012 DOI: 10.1055/s-2005-870410]
53 **Buscaglia JM**, Giday SA, Kantsevoy SV, Clarke JO, Magno P, Yong E, Mullin GE. Performance characteristics of the suspected blood indicator feature in capsule endoscopy according to indication for study. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **6**: 298-301 [PMID: 18255353 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2007.12.029]
54 **D'Halluin PN**, Delvaux M, Lapalus MG, Sacher-Huvelin S, Ben Soussan E, Heyries L, Filoche B, Saurin JC, Gay G, Heresbach D. Does the "Suspected Blood Indicator" improve the detection of bleeding lesions by capsule endoscopy? *Gastrointest Endosc* 2005; **61**: 243-249 [PMID: 15729233]
55 **Tal AO**, Filmann N, Makhlin K, Hausmann J, Friedrich-Rust M, Herrmann E, Zeuzem S, Albert JG. The capsule endoscopy "suspected blood indicator" (SBI) for detection of active small bowel bleeding: no active bleeding in case of negative SBI. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2014; **49**: 1131-1135 [PMID: 24884306 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2014.923503]
56 **Zhang W**, Han ZL, Cheng Y, Xu YZ, Xiao K, Li AM, Wang YD, Li Y, Liu SD. Value of the patency capsule in pre-evaluation for capsule endoscopy in cases of intestinal obstruction. *J Dig Dis* 2014; **15**: 345-351 [PMID: 24716539 DOI: 10.1111/1751-2980.12152]
57 **Lewis BS**. Expanding role of capsule endoscopy in inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 4137-4141 [PMID: 18636657]
58 **Nakamura M**, Hirooka Y, Yamamura T, Miyahara R, Watanabe O, Ando T, Ohmiya N, Goto H. Clinical usefulness of novel tag-less Agile patency capsule prior to capsule endoscopy for patients with suspected small bowel stenosis. *Dig Endosc* 2014; **27**: 61-66 [PMID: 24860910 DOI: 10.1111/den.12306]
59 **Spada C**, Shah SK, Riccioni ME, Spera G, Marchese M, Iacopini F, Familiari P, Costamagna G. Video capsule endoscopy in patients with known or suspected small bowel stricture previously tested with the dissolving patency capsule. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2007; **41**: 576-582 [PMID: 17577114 DOI: 10.1097/01.mcg.0000225633.14663.64]
60 **Banerjee R**, Bhargav P, Reddy P, Gupta R, Lakhtakia S,

Tandan M, Rao VG, Reddy ND. Safety and efficacy of the M2A patency capsule for diagnosis of critical intestinal patency: results of a prospective clinical trial. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **22**: 2060-2063 [PMID: 17614957 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2007.05039.x]

61 **Herrerias JM**, Leighton JA, Costamagna G, Infantolino A, Eliakim R, Fischer D, Rubin DT, Manten HD, Scapa E, Morgan DR, Bergwerk AJ, Koslowsky B, Adler SN. Agile patency system eliminates risk of capsule retention in patients with known intestinal strictures who undergo capsule endoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **67**: 902-909 [PMID: 18355824 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.10.063]

62 **Delvaux M**, Ben Soussan E, Laurent V, Lerebours E, Gay G. Clinical evaluation of the use of the M2A patency capsule system before a capsule endoscopy procedure, in patients with known or suspected intestinal stenosis. *Endoscopy* 2005; **37**: 801-807 [PMID: 16116529 DOI: 10.1055/s-2005-870241]

63 **Friedrich K**, Gehrke S, Stremmel W, Sieg A. First clinical trial of a newly developed capsule endoscope with panoramic side view for small bowel: a pilot study. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **28**: 1496-1501 [PMID: 23701674 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.12280]

64 **Pioche M**, Vanbiervliet G, Jacob P, Duburque C, Gincul R, Filoche B, Daudet J, Filippi J, Saurin JC. Prospective randomized comparison between axial- and lateral-viewing capsule endoscopy systems in patients with obscure digestive bleeding. *Endoscopy* 2014; **46**: 479-484 [PMID: 24285122 DOI: 10.1055/s-0033-1358832]

65 **Koulaouzidis A**, Karargyris A. Three-dimensional image reconstruction in capsule endoscopy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 4086-4090 [PMID: 22919239 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i31.4086]

66 **Koulaouzidis A**, Karargyris A, Rondonotti E, Noble CL, Douglas S, Alexandridis E, Zahid AM, Bathgate AJ, Trimble KC, Plevris JN. Three-dimensional representation software as image enhancement tool in small-bowel capsule endoscopy: a feasibility study. *Dig Liver Dis* 2013; **45**: 909-914 [PMID: 23849802 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2013.05.013]

67 **Karargyris A**, Rondonotti E, Mandelli G, Koulaouzidis A. Evaluation of 4 three-dimensional representation algorithms in capsule endoscopy images. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 8028-8033 [PMID: 24307796 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i44.8028]

68 **Than TD**, Alici G, Zhou H, Li W. A review of localization systems for robotic endoscopic capsules. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng* 2012; **59**: 2387-2399 [PMID: 22736628 DOI: 10.1109/TBME.2012.2201715]

69 **Marya N**, Karellas A, Foley A, Roychowdhury A, Cave D. Computerized 3-dimensional localization of a video capsule in the abdominal cavity: validation by digital radiography. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **79**: 669-674 [PMID: 24424401 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.11.022]

70 **Karargyris A**, Koulaouzidis A. Capsule-odometer: a concept to improve accurate lesion localisation. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 5943-5946 [PMID: 24124345 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i35.5943]

71 **Raju GS**, Gerson L, Das A, Lewis B. American Gastroenterological Association (AGA) Institute technical review on obscure gastrointestinal bleeding. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **133**: 1697-1717 [PMID: 17983812 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.06.007]

72 **Westerhof J**, Weersma RK, Koornstra JJ. Investigating obscure gastrointestinal bleeding: capsule endoscopy or double balloon enteroscopy? *Neth J Med* 2009; **67**: 260-265 [PMID: 19687519]

73 **Gilbert D**, O'Malley S, Selby W. Are repeat upper gastrointestinal endoscopy and colonoscopy necessary within six months of capsule endoscopy in patients with obscure gastrointestinal bleeding? *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **23**: 1806-1809 [PMID: 19032448 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2008.05643.x]

74 **Sidhu PS**, McAlindon ME, Drew K, Sidhu R. Diagnostic yield of small-bowel capsule endoscopy in patients with iron deficiency anemia: does it affect management? *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **78**: 800-801 [PMID: 24120341 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.06.022]

75 **Albert JG**, Schülbe R, Hahn L, Heinig D, Schoppmeyer K, Porst H, Lorenz R, Plauth M, Dollinger MM, Mössner J, Caca K, Fleig WE. Impact of capsule endoscopy on outcome in mid-intestinal bleeding: a multicentre cohort study in 285 patients. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **20**: 971-977 [PMID: 18787463 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e3282fb2a53]

76 **Arakawa D**, Ohmiya N, Nakamura M, Honda W, Shirai O, Itoh A, Hirooka Y, Niwa Y, Maeda O, Ando T, Goto H. Outcome after enteroscopy for patients with obscure GI bleeding: diagnostic comparison between double-balloon endoscopy and videocapsule endoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2009; **69**: 866-874 [PMID: 19136098 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.06.008]

77 **Teshima CW**, Kuipers EJ, van Zanten SV, Mensink PB. Double balloon enteroscopy and capsule endoscopy for obscure gastrointestinal bleeding: an updated meta-analysis. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **26**: 796-801 [PMID: 21155884 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2010.06530.x]

78 **Calabrese C**, Liguori G, Gionchetti P, Rizzello F, Laureti S, Di Simone MP, Poggioli G, Campieri M. Obscure gastrointestinal bleeding: single centre experience of capsule endoscopy. *Intern Emerg Med* 2013; **8**: 681-687 [PMID: 21959901 DOI: 10.1007/s11739-011-0699-z]

79 **Neu B**, Ell C, May A, Schmid E, Riemann JF, Hagenmüller F, Keuchel M, Soehendra N, Seitz U, Meining A, Rösch T. Capsule endoscopy versus standard tests in influencing management of obscure digestive bleeding: results from a German multicenter trial. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 1736-1742 [PMID: 16086709 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2005.41649.x]

80 **Triester SL**, Leighton JA, Leontiadis GI, Fleischer DE, Hara AK, Heigh RI, Shiff AD, Sharma VK. A meta-analysis of the yield of capsule endoscopy compared to other diagnostic modalities in patients with obscure gastrointestinal bleeding. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 2407-2418 [PMID: 16279893 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2005.00274.x]

81 **Triester SL**, Leighton JA, Leontiadis GI, Gurudu SR, Fleischer DE, Hara AK, Heigh RI, Shiff AD, Sharma VK. A meta-analysis of the yield of capsule endoscopy compared to other diagnostic modalities in patients with non-stricturing small bowel Crohn's disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 954-964 [PMID: 16696781 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00506.x]

82 **Leighton JA**, Triester SL, Sharma VK. Capsule endoscopy: a meta-analysis for use with obscure gastrointestinal bleeding and Crohn's disease. *Gastrointest Endosc Clin N Am* 2006; **16**: 229-250 [PMID: 16644453 DOI: 10.1016/j.giec.2006.03.004]

83 **Pennazio M**, Santucci R, Rondonotti E, Abbiati C, Beccari G, Rossini FP, De Franchis R. Outcome of patients with obscure gastrointestinal bleeding after capsule endoscopy: report of 100 consecutive cases. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 643-653 [PMID: 14988816]

84 **Sidhu R**, Sanders DS, Kapur K, Leeds JS, McAlindon ME. Factors predicting the diagnostic yield and intervention in obscure gastrointestinal bleeding investigated using capsule endoscopy. *J Gastrointestin Liver Dis* 2009; **18**: 273-278 [PMID: 19795019]

85 **Sidhu R**, Sanders DS, Sakellariou VP, McAlindon ME. Capsule endoscopy and obscure gastrointestinal bleeding: are transfusion dependence and comorbidity further risk factors to predict a diagnosis? *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 1329-1330 [PMID: 17531021 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2007.01171.x]

86 **Singh A**, Marshall C, Chaudhuri B, Okoli C, Foley A, Person SD, Bhattacharya K, Cave DR. Timing of video capsule

endoscopy relative to overt obscure GI bleeding: implications from a retrospective study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **77**: 761-766 [PMID: 23375526 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.11.041]
87 **Yamada A**, Watabe H, Kobayashi Y, Yamaji Y, Yoshida H, Koike K. Timing of capsule endoscopy influences the diagnosis and outcome in obscure-overt gastrointestinal bleeding. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2012; **59**: 676-679 [PMID: 22469708 DOI: 10.5754/hge12180]
88 **May A**, Wardak A, Nachbar L, Remke S, Ell C. Influence of patient selection on the outcome of capsule endoscopy in patients with chronic gastrointestinal bleeding. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2005; **39**: 684-688 [PMID: 16082277]
89 **Leighton JA**, Sharma VK, Hentz JG, Musil D, Malikowski MJ, McWane TL, Fleischer DE. Capsule endoscopy versus push enteroscopy for evaluation of obscure gastrointestinal bleeding with 1-year outcomes. *Dig Dis Sci* 2006; **51**: 891-899 [PMID: 16758305 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-006-9350-7]
90 **Mylonaki M**, Fritscher-Ravens A, Swain P. Wireless capsule endoscopy: a comparison with push enteroscopy in patients with gastroscopy and colonoscopy negative gastrointestinal bleeding. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 1122-1126 [PMID: 12865269]
91 **Holleran GE**, Barry SA, Thornton OJ, Dobson MJ, McNamara DA. The use of small bowel capsule endoscopy in iron deficiency anaemia: low impact on outcome in the medium term despite high diagnostic yield. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **25**: 327-332 [PMID: 23183118 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e32835b7d3a]
92 **Holleran G**, Hall B, Alhinai M, Zaheer A, Leen R, Alakkari A, Mahmud N, McNamara D. Double-balloon enteroscopy in Ireland in the capsule endoscopy era. *Ir J Med Sci* 2014; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 24633527 DOI: 10.1007/s11845-014-1097-0]
93 **Albert JG**, Nachtigall F, Wiedbrauck F, Dollinger MM, Gittinger FS, Hollerbach S, Wienke A. Minimizing procedural cost in diagnosing small bowel bleeding: comparison of a strategy based on initial capsule endoscopy versus initial double-balloon enteroscopy. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **22**: 679-688 [PMID: 20446352]
94 **Nakamura M**, Niwa Y, Ohmiya N, Miyahara R, Ohashi A, Itoh A, Hirooka Y, Goto H. Preliminary comparison of capsule endoscopy and double-balloon enteroscopy in patients with suspected small-bowel bleeding. *Endoscopy* 2006; **38**: 59-66 [PMID: 16429356 DOI: 10.1055/s-2005-870446]
95 **Pasha SF**, Leighton JA, Das A, Harrison ME, Decker GA, Fleischer DE, Sharma VK. Double-balloon enteroscopy and capsule endoscopy have comparable diagnostic yield in small-bowel disease: a meta-analysis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **6**: 671-676 [PMID: 18356113 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2008.01.005]
96 **Mensink PB**, Haringsma J, Kucharzik T, Cellier C, Pérez-Cuadrado E, Mönkemüller K, Gasbarrini A, Kaffes AJ, Nakamura K, Yen HH, Yamamoto H. Complications of double balloon enteroscopy: a multicenter survey. *Endoscopy* 2007; **39**: 613-615 [PMID: 17516287 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-966444]
97 **Matsumura T**, Arai M, Saito K, Okimoto K, Saito M, Minemura S, Oyamada A, Maruoka D, Nakagawa T, Watabe H, Katsuno T, Yokosuka O. Predictive factor of re-bleeding after negative capsule endoscopy for obscure gastrointestinal bleeding: over 1-year follow-up study. *Dig Endosc* 2014; **26**: 650-658 [PMID: 24628735 DOI: 10.1111/den.12257]
98 **Somsouk M**, Gralnek IM, Inadomi JM. Management of obscure occult gastrointestinal bleeding: a cost-minimization analysis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **6**: 661-670 [PMID: 18550005 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2008.02.033]
99 **Marmo R**, Rotondano G, Rondonotti E, de Franchis R, D'Incà R, Vettorato MG, Costamagna G, Riccioni ME, Spada C, D'Angella R, Milazzo G, Faraone A, Rizzetto M, Barbon V, Occhipinti P, Saettone S, Iaquinto G, Rossini FP. Capsule enteroscopy vs. other diagnostic procedures in diagnosing obscure gastrointestinal bleeding: a cost-effectiveness study. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **19**: 535-542 [PMID: 17556898 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e32812144dd]
100 **Gerson L**, Kamal A. Cost-effectiveness analysis of management strategies for obscure GI bleeding. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 920-936 [PMID: 18407270 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.01.035]
101 **Lai LH**, Wong GL, Chow DK, Lau JY, Sung JJ, Leung WK. Long-term follow-up of patients with obscure gastrointestinal bleeding after negative capsule endoscopy. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 1224-1228 [PMID: 16771942 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00565.x]
102 **Riccioni ME**, Urgesi R, Cianci R, Rizzo G, D'Angelo L, Marmo R, Costamagna G. Negative capsule endoscopy in patients with obscure gastrointestinal bleeding reliable: recurrence of bleeding on long-term follow-up. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 4520-4525 [PMID: 23901227 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i28.4520]
103 **Macdonald J**, Porter V, McNamara D. Negative capsule endoscopy in patients with obscure GI bleeding predicts low rebleeding rates. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 1122-1127 [PMID: 19028220 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.06.054]
104 **Koh SJ**, Im JP, Kim JW, Kim BG, Lee KL, Kim SG, Kim JS, Jung HC. Long-term outcome in patients with obscure gastrointestinal bleeding after negative capsule endoscopy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 1632-1638 [PMID: 23539070 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i10.1632]
105 **Park JJ**, Cheon JH, Kim HM, Park HS, Moon CM, Lee JH, Hong SP, Kim TI, Kim WH. Negative capsule endoscopy without subsequent enteroscopy does not predict lower long-term rebleeding rates in patients with obscure GI bleeding. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **71**: 990-997 [PMID: 20304392 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2009.12.009]
106 **Viazis N**, Papaxoinis K, Vlachogiannakos J, Efthymiou A, Theodoropoulos I, Karamanolis DG. Is there a role for second-look capsule endoscopy in patients with obscure GI bleeding after a nondiagnostic first test? *Gastrointest Endosc* 2009; **69**: 850-856 [PMID: 18950762 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.05.053]
107 **Jones BH**, Fleischer DE, Sharma VK, Heigh RI, Shiff AD, Hernandez JL, Leighton JA. Yield of repeat wireless video capsule endoscopy in patients with obscure gastrointestinal bleeding. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 1058-1064 [PMID: 15842579 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2005.40722.x]
108 **Svarta S**, Segal B, Law J, Sandhar A, Kwok R, Jacques A, Lakzadeh P, Enns R. Diagnostic yield of repeat capsule endoscopy and the effect on subsequent patient management. *Can J Gastroenterol* 2010; **24**: 441-444 [PMID: 20652160]
109 **Mergener K**, Ponchon T, Gralnek I, Pennazio M, Gay G, Selby W, Seidman EG, Cellier C, Murray J, de Franchis R, Rösch T, Lewis BS. Literature review and recommendations for clinical application of small-bowel capsule endoscopy, based on a panel discussion by international experts. Consensus statements for small-bowel capsule endoscopy, 2006/2007. *Endoscopy* 2007; **39**: 895-909 [PMID: 17968807 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-966930]
110 **Niv Y**. Capsule endoscopy in the diagnosis of Crohn's disease. *Med Devices (Auckl)* 2013; **6**: 85-89 [PMID: 23818810 DOI: 10.2147/MDER.S38728]
111 **Bourreille A**, Ignjatovic A, Aabakken L, Loftus EV, Eliakim R, Pennazio M, Bouhnik Y, Seidman E, Keuchel M, Albert JG, Ardizzone S, Bar-Meir S, Bisschops R, Despott EJ, Fortun PF, Heuschkel R, Kammermeier J, Leighton JA, Mantzaris GJ, Moussata D, Lo S, Paulsen V, Panés J, Radford-Smith G, Reinisch W, Rondonotti E, Sanders DS, Swoger JM, Yamamoto H, Travis S, Colombel JF, Van Gossum A. Role of small-bowel endoscopy in the management of patients with inflammatory bowel disease: an international OMED-ECCO consensus. *Endoscopy* 2009; **41**: 618-637 [PMID: 19588292

DOI: 10.1055/s-0029-1214790]
112 **Lucendo AJ**, Guagnozzi D. Small bowel video capsule endoscopy in Crohn's disease: What have we learned in the last ten years? *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **3**: 23-29 [PMID: 21403813 DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v3.i2.23]
113 **Mow WS**, Lo SK, Targan SR, Dubinsky MC, Treyzon L, Abreu-Martin MT, Papadakis KA, Vasiliauskas EA. Initial experience with wireless capsule enteroscopy in the diagnosis and management of inflammatory bowel disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2004; **2**: 31-40 [PMID: 15017630]
114 **Fidder HH**, Nadler M, Lahat A, Lahav M, Bardan E, Avidan B, Bar-Meir S. The utility of capsule endoscopy in the diagnosis of Crohn's disease based on patient's symptoms. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2007; **41**: 384-387 [PMID: 17413607 DOI: 10.1097/01.mcg.0000225621.02094.8a]
115 **Dionisio PM**, Gurudu SR, Leighton JA, Leontiadis GI, Fleischer DE, Hara AK, Heigh RI, Shiff AD, Sharma VK. Capsule endoscopy has a significantly higher diagnostic yield in patients with suspected and established small-bowel Crohn's disease: a meta-analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 1240-1248; quiz 1249 [PMID: 20029412 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.713]
116 **Lu XH**, Qin MW, Wen XH, Liu W, Shi JH, Qian JM, Li JN. [The diagnosis of Crohn's disease of the small bowel: comparing CT enterography, capsule endoscopy, small-bowel follow through and ileocolonoscopy]. *Zhonghua Nei Ke Zazhi* 2010; **49**: 746-749 [PMID: 21092443]
117 **Marmo R**, Rotondano G, Piscopo R, Bianco MA, Siani A, Catalano O, Cipolletta L. Capsule endoscopy versus enteroclysis in the detection of small-bowel involvement in Crohn's disease: a prospective trial. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **3**: 772-776 [PMID: 16234005]
118 **Solem CA**, Loftus EV, Fletcher JG, Baron TH, Gostout CJ, Petersen BT, Tremaine WJ, Egan LJ, Faubion WA, Schroeder KW, Pardi DS, Hanson KA, Jewell DA, Barlow JM, Fidler JL, Huprich JE, Johnson CD, Harmsen WS, Zinsmeister AR, Sandborn WJ. Small-bowel imaging in Crohn's disease: a prospective, blinded, 4-way comparison trial. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 255-266 [PMID: 18513722 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.02.017]
119 **Girelli CM**, Porta P, Malacrida V, Barzaghi F, Rocca F. Clinical outcome of patients examined by capsule endoscopy for suspected small bowel Crohn's disease. *Dig Liver Dis* 2007; **39**: 148-154 [PMID: 17196893 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2006.10.018]
120 **Gölder SK**, Schreyer AG, Endlicher E, Feuerbach S, Schölmerich J, Kullmann F, Seitz J, Rogler G, Herfarth H. Comparison of capsule endoscopy and magnetic resonance (MR) enteroclysis in suspected small bowel disease. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2006; **21**: 97-104 [PMID: 15846497 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-005-0755-0]
121 **Voderholzer WA**, Beinhoelzl J, Rogalla P, Murrer S, Schachschal G, Lochs H, Ortner MA. Small bowel involvement in Crohn's disease: a prospective comparison of wireless capsule endoscopy and computed tomography enteroclysis. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 369-373 [PMID: 15710985 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2004.040055]
122 **Crook DW**, Knuesel PR, Froehlich JM, Eigenmann F, Unterweger M, Beer HJ, Kubik-Huch RA. Comparison of magnetic resonance enterography and video capsule endoscopy in evaluating small bowel disease. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **21**: 54-65 [PMID: 19086147]
123 **Leighton JA**, Gralnek IM, Cohen SA, Toth E, Cave DR, Wolf DC, Mullin GE, Ketover SR, Legnani PE, Seidman EG, Crowell MD, Bergwerk AJ, Peled R, Eliakim R. Capsule endoscopy is superior to small-bowel follow-through and equivalent to ileocolonoscopy in suspected Crohn's disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **12**: 609-615 [PMID: 24075891 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2013.09.028]
124 **D'Incà R**, Caccaro R. Measuring disease activity in Crohn's disease: what is currently available to the clinician. *Clin Exp Gastroenterol* 2014; **7**: 151-161 [PMID: 24876789 DOI: 10.2147/CEG.S41413]
125 **Lang J**, Price AB, Levi AJ, Burke M, Gumpel JM, Bjarnason I. Diaphragm disease: pathology of disease of the small intestine induced by non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. *J Clin Pathol* 1988; **41**: 516-526 [PMID: 3384981]
126 **Doherty GA**, Moss AC, Cheifetz AS. Capsule endoscopy in suspected Crohn's disease: "yield" does not equal "diagnosis". *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 2111; author reply 2111-2112 [PMID: 20818355 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2010.203]
127 **Gralnek IM**, Defranchis R, Seidman E, Leighton JA, Legnani P, Lewis BS. Development of a capsule endoscopy scoring index for small bowel mucosal inflammatory change. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **27**: 146-154 [PMID: 17956598 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2007.03556.x]
128 **Niv Y**, Ilani S, Levi Z, Hershkowitz M, Niv E, Fireman Z, O'Donnel S, O'Morain C, Eliakim R, Scapa E, Kalantzis N, Kalantzis C, Apostolopoulos P, Gal E. Validation of the Capsule Endoscopy Crohn's Disease Activity Index (CECDAI or Niv score): a multicenter prospective study. *Endoscopy* 2012; **44**: 21-26 [PMID: 22125196 DOI: 10.1055/s-0031-1291385]
129 **Hall B**, Holleran G, Costigan D, McNamara D. Capsule endoscopy: High negative predictive value in the long term despite a low diagnostic yield in patients with suspected Crohn's disease. *United European Gastroenterol J* 2013; **1**: 461-466 [PMID: 24917998 DOI: 10.1177/2050640613508551]
130 **Sharaf RN**, Levesque BG, Shah S, Longacre T, Pasricha PJ. Capsule endoscopy in the diagnosis of suspected small bowel involvement with Crohn's disease. *Dig Dis Sci* 2011; **56**: 46-48 [PMID: 20668937 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-010-1355-6]
131 **Kornbluth A**, Colombel JF, Leighton JA, Loftus E. ICCE consensus for inflammatory bowel disease. *Endoscopy* 2005; **37**: 1051-1054 [PMID: 16189789 DOI: 10.1055/s-2005-870315]
132 **Caunedo-Alvarez A**, Romero-Vazquez J, Herrerias-Gutierrez JM. Patency and Agile capsules. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 5269-5273 [PMID: 18785278]
133 **Levesque BG**, Cipriano LE, Chang SL, Lee KK, Owens DK, Garber AM. Cost effectiveness of alternative imaging strategies for the diagnosis of small-bowel Crohn's disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **8**: 261-267, 261-267 [PMID: 19896559 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2009.10.032]
134 **Leighton JA**, Gralnek IM, Richner RE, Lacey MJ, Papatheofanis FJ. Capsule endoscopy in suspected small bowel Crohn's disease: economic impact of disease diagnosis and treatment. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 5685-5692 [PMID: 19960565]
135 **Abu-Hamda EM**, Hattab EM, Lynch PM. Small bowel tumors. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2003; **5**: 386-393 [PMID: 12959719]
136 **Williamson JM**, Williamson RC. Small bowel tumors: pathology and management. *J Med Assoc Thai* 2014; **97**: 126-137 [PMID: 24701741]
137 **Sîngeap AM**, Trifan A, Cojocariu C, Sfarti C, Stanciu C. [Capsule endoscopy role in diagnosis of small bowel tumors]. *Rev Med Chir Soc Med Nat Iasi* 2010; **114**: 988-992 [PMID: 21500447]
138 **Talamonti MS**, Goetz LH, Rao S, Joehl RJ. Primary cancers of the small bowel: analysis of prognostic factors and results of surgical management. *Arch Surg* 2002; **137**: 564-70; discussion 570-1 [PMID: 11982470]
139 **Goenka MK**, Majumder S, Goenka U. Capsule endoscopy: Present status and future expectation. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 10024-10037 [PMID: 25110430 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i29.10024]
140 **Rondonotti E**, Pennazio M, Toth E, Menchen P, Riccioni ME, De Palma GD, Scotto F, De Looze D, Pachofsky T, Tacheci I, Havelund T, Couto G, Trifan A, Kofokotsios A, Cannizzaro R, Perez-Quadrado E, de Franchis R. Small-bowel neoplasms in

patients undergoing video capsule endoscopy: a multicenter European study. *Endoscopy* 2008; **40**: 488-495 [PMID: 18464193 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-995783]
141 **Chen WG**, Shan GD, Zhang H, Li L, Yue M, Xiang Z, Cheng Y, Wu CJ, Fang Y, Chen LH. Double-balloon enteroscopy in small bowel tumors: a Chinese single-center study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 3665-3671 [PMID: 23801870 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i23.3665]
142 **Minardi AJ**, Zibari GB, Aultman DF, McMillan RW, McDonald JC. Small-bowel tumors. *J Am Coll Surg* 1998; **186**: 664-668 [PMID: 9632155]
143 **Urgesi R**, Riccioni ME, Bizzotto A, Cianci R, Spada C, Pelecca G, Ricci R, Costamagna G. Increased diagnostic yield of small bowel tumors with PillCam: the role of capsule endoscopy in the diagnosis and treatment of gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs). Italian single-center experience. *Tumori* 2012; **98**: 357-363 [PMID: 22825512 DOI: 10.1700/1125.12405]
144 **Leighton JA**. The role of endoscopic imaging of the small bowel in clinical practice. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2011; **106**: 27-36; quiz 37 [PMID: 20978483 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2010.410]
145 **Târcoveanu E**, Georgescu S, Vasilescu A, Dănilă N, Lupaşcu C, Dimofte G, Neacşu CN, Moldovanu R. [Small bowel tumours from barium meal to capsule endoscopy and from open to laparoscopic approach]. *Chirurgia (Bucur)* 2011; **106**: 451-464 [PMID: 21991870]
146 **Bailey AA**, Debinski HS, Appleyard MN, Remedios ML, Hooper JE, Walsh AJ, Selby WS. Diagnosis and outcome of small bowel tumors found by capsule endoscopy: a three-center Australian experience. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 2237-2243 [PMID: 17032187 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00749.x]
147 **Schulmann K**, Hollerbach S, Kraus K, Willert J, Vogel T, Möslein G, Pox C, Reiser M, Reinacher-Schick A, Schmiegel W. Feasibility and diagnostic utility of video capsule endoscopy for the detection of small bowel polyps in patients with hereditary polyposis syndromes. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 27-37 [PMID: 15654777 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2005.40102.x]
148 **Burke CA**, Santisi J, Church J, Levinthal G. The utility of capsule endoscopy small bowel surveillance in patients with polyposis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 1498-1502 [PMID: 15984971 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2005.41506.x]
149 **Günther U**, Bojarski C, Buhr HJ, Zeitz M, Heller F. Capsule endoscopy in small-bowel surveillance of patients with hereditary polyposis syndromes. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2010; **25**: 1377-1382 [PMID: 20544205 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-010-0982-x]
150 **Plum N**, May A, Manner H, Ell C. Small-bowel diagnosis in patients with familial adenomatous polyposis: comparison of push enteroscopy, capsule endoscopy, ileoscopy, and enteroclysis. *Z Gastroenterol* 2009; **47**: 339-346 [PMID: 19358059 DOI: 10.1055/s-2008-1027984]
151 **Wong RF**, Tuteja AK, Haslem DS, Pappas L, Szabo A, Ogara MM, DiSario JA. Video capsule endoscopy compared with standard endoscopy for the evaluation of small-bowel polyps in persons with familial adenomatous polyposis (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2006; **64**: 530-537 [PMID: 16996344 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2005.12.014]
152 **Koornstra JJ**. Small bowel endoscopy in familial adenomatous polyposis and Lynch syndrome. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2012; **26**: 359-368 [PMID: 22704577 DOI: 10.1016/j.bpg.2012.01.022]
153 **Hatogai K**, Hosoe N, Imaeda H, Rey JF, Okada S, Ishibashi Y, Kimura K, Yoneno K, Usui S, Ida Y, Tsukada N, Kanai T, Hibi T, Ogata H. Role of enhanced visibility in evaluating polyposis syndromes using a newly developed contrast image capsule endoscope. *Gut Liver* 2012; **6**: 218-222 [PMID: 22570751 DOI: 10.5009/gnl.2012.6.2.218]
154 **Urquhart P**, Grimpen F, Lim GJ, Pizzey C, Stella DL, Tesar PA, Macrae FA, Appleyard MA, Brown GJ. Capsule endoscopy versus magnetic resonance enterography for the detection of small bowel polyps in Peutz-Jeghers syndrome. *Fam Cancer* 2014; **13**: 249-255 [PMID: 24509884 DOI: 10.1007/s10689-014-9700-0]
155 **Rahmi G**, Samaha E, Lorenceau-Savale C, Landi B, Edery J, Manière T, Canard JM, Malamut G, Chatellier G, Cellier C. Small bowel polypectomy by double balloon enteroscopy: Correlation with prior capsule endoscopy. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **5**: 219-225 [PMID: 23678374 DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v5.i5.219]
156 **Hale MF**, Sidhu R, McAlindon ME. Capsule endoscopy: current practice and future directions. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 7752-7759 [PMID: 24976712 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i24.7752]
157 **Urbain D**, Van Laer W, Mana F. Capsule endoscopy for detection of small bowel malignancies. *Surg Technol Int* 2008; **17**: 126-130 [PMID: 18802892]
158 **Girelli CM**, Porta P, Colombo E, Lesinigo E, Bernasconi G. Development of a novel index to discriminate bulge from mass on small-bowel capsule endoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **74**: 1067-1074; quiz 1067-1074 [PMID: 21907982 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.07.022]
159 **Lim YJ**, Chun HJ. Recent Advances in NSAIDs-Induced Enteropathy Therapeutics: New Options, New Challenges. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2013; **2013**: 761060 [PMID: 24159330 DOI: 10.1155/2013/761060]
160 **Lanas A**, García-Rodríguez LA, Polo-Tomás M, Ponce M, Alonso-Abreu I, Perez-Aisa MA, Perez-Gisbert J, Bujanda L, Castro M, Muñoz M, Rodrigo L, Calvet X, Del-Pino D, Garcia S. Time trends and impact of upper and lower gastrointestinal bleeding and perforation in clinical practice. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 1633-1641 [PMID: 19574968 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.164]
161 **Handa O**, Naito Y, Fukui A, Omatsu T, Yoshikawa T. The impact of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs on the small intestinal epithelium. *J Clin Biochem Nutr* 2014; **54**: 2-6 [PMID: 24426183 DOI: 10.3164/jcbn.13-84]
162 **Maiden L**. Capsule endoscopic diagnosis of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug-induced enteropathy. *J Gastroenterol* 2009; **44** Suppl 19: 64-71 [PMID: 19148796 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-008-2248-8]
163 **Maiden L**, Thjodleifsson B, Theodors A, Gonzalez J, Bjarnason I. A quantitative analysis of NSAID-induced small bowel pathology by capsule enteroscopy. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 1172-1178 [PMID: 15887101]
164 **Higuchi K**, Umegaki E, Watanabe T, Yoda Y, Morita E, Murano M, Tokioka S, Arakawa T. Present status and strategy of NSAIDs-induced small bowel injury. *J Gastroenterol* 2009; **44**: 879-888 [PMID: 19568687 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-009-0102-2]
165 **Endo H**, Hosono K, Inamori M, Nozaki Y, Yoneda K, Fujita K, Takahashi H, Yoneda M, Abe Y, Kirikoshi H, Kobayashi N, Kubota K, Saito S, Ohya T, Hisatomi K, Teratani T, Matsuhashi N, Nakajima A. Characteristics of small bowel injury in symptomatic chronic low-dose aspirin users: the experience of two medical centers in capsule endoscopy. *J Gastroenterol* 2009; **44**: 544-549 [PMID: 19373431 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-009-0040-z]
166 **Matsumoto T**, Kudo T, Esaki M, Yano T, Yamamoto H, Sakamoto C, Goto H, Nakase H, Tanaka S, Matsui T, Sugano K, Iida M. Prevalence of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug-induced enteropathy determined by double-balloon endoscopy: a Japanese multicenter study. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2008; **43**: 490-496 [PMID: 18365915 DOI: 10.1080/00365520701794121]
167 **Slesser AA**, Wharton R, Smith GV, Buchanan GN. Systematic review of small bowel diaphragm disease requiring surgery. *Colorectal Dis* 2012; **14**: 804-813 [PMID: 21812898 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2011.02741.x]
168 **Graham DY**, Opekun AR, Willingham FF, Qureshi WA.

Visible small-intestinal mucosal injury in chronic NSAID users. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **3**: 55-59 [PMID: 15645405]
169 **Tachecí I**, Bradna P, Douda T, Bastecká D, Kopáčová M, Rejchrt S, Bureš J. NSAID-Induced Enteropathy in Rheumatoid Arthritis Patients with Chronic Occult Gastrointestinal Bleeding: A Prospective Capsule Endoscopy Study. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2013; **2013**: 268382 [PMID: 24382953 DOI: 10.1155/2013/268382]
170 **Goldstein JL**, Eisen GM, Lewis B, Gralnek IM, Zlotnick S, Fort JG. Video capsule endoscopy to prospectively assess small bowel injury with celecoxib, naproxen plus omeprazole, and placebo. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **3**: 133-141 [PMID: 15704047]
171 **Chan FK**, Lanas A, Scheiman J, Berger MF, Nguyen H, Goldstein JL. Celecoxib versus omeprazole and diclofenac in patients with osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis (CONDOR): a randomised trial. *Lancet* 2010; **376**: 173-179 [PMID: 20638563 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(10)60673-3]
172 **Maiden L**, Thjodleifsson B, Seigal A, Bjarnason II, Scott D, Birgisson S, Bjarnason I. Long-term effects of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and cyclooxygenase-2 selective agents on the small bowel: a cross-sectional capsule enteroscopy study. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **5**: 1040-1045 [PMID: 17625980 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2007.04.031]
173 **Leung WK**, Bjarnason I, Wong VW, Sung JJ, Chan FK. Small bowel enteropathy associated with chronic low-dose aspirin therapy. *Lancet* 2007; **369**: 614 [PMID: 17307109 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(07)60282-7]
174 **Green PH**, Cellier C. Celiac disease. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **357**: 1731-1743 [PMID: 17960014 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra071600]
175 **Lee SK**, Green PH. Endoscopy in celiac disease. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2005; **21**: 589-594 [PMID: 16093775]
176 **Rokkas T**, Niv Y. The role of video capsule endoscopy in the diagnosis of celiac disease: a meta-analysis. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **24**: 303-308 [PMID: 22266837 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e32834fa914]
177 **El-Matary W**, Huynh H, Vandermeer B. Diagnostic characteristics of given video capsule endoscopy in diagnosis of celiac disease: a meta-analysis. *J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A* 2009; **19**: 815-820 [PMID: 19405806 DOI: 10.1089/lap.2008.0380]
178 **Kurien M**, Evans KE, Aziz I, Sidhu R, Drew K, Rogers TL, McAlindon ME, Sanders DS. Capsule endoscopy in adult celiac disease: a potential role in equivocal cases of celiac disease? *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **77**: 227-232 [PMID: 23200728 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.09.031]
179 **Atlas DS**, Rubio-Tapia A, Van Dyke CT, Lahr BD, Murray JA. Capsule endoscopy in nonresponsive celiac disease. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **74**: 1315-1322 [PMID: 21835400 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.05.049]
180 **Tennyson CA**, Green PH. The role of capsule endoscopy in patients with nonresponsive celiac disease. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **74**: 1323-1324 [PMID: 22136777 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.07.021]
181 **Van Weyenberg SJ**, Smits F, Jacobs MA, Van Turenhout ST, Mulder CJ. Video capsule endoscopy in patients with nonresponsive celiac disease. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2013; **47**: 393-399 [PMID: 23164686 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e318-26bea12]
182 **Lidums I**, Teo E, Field J, Cummins AG. Capsule endoscopy: a valuable tool in the follow-up of people with celiac disease on a gluten-free diet. *Clin Transl Gastroenterol* 2011; **2**: e4 [PMID: 23237971 DOI: 10.1038/ctg.2011.3]
183 **Akin E**, Ersoy O. Capsule endoscopy in celiac disease. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2012; **2012**: 676073 [PMID: 22235199 DOI: 10.1155/2012/676073]
184 **Kim HM**, Yang S, Kim J, Park S, Cho JH, Park JY, Kim TS, Yoon ES, Song SY, Bang S. Active locomotion of a paddling-based capsule endoscope in an in vitro and in vivo experiment (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **72**: 381-387 [PMID: 20497903 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2009.12.058]
185 **Tortora G**, Valdastri P, Susilo E, Menciassi A, Dario P, Rieber F, Schurr MO. Propeller-based wireless device for active capsular endoscopy in the gastric district. *Minim Invasive Ther Allied Technol* 2009; **18**: 280-290 [PMID: 19707936 DOI: 10.1080/13645700903201167]
186 **Quirini M**, Menciassi A, Scapellato S, Dario P, Rieber F, Ho CN, Schostek S, Schurr MO. Feasibility proof of a legged locomotion capsule for the GI tract. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **67**: 1153-1158 [PMID: 18513557 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.11.052]
187 **Gao M**, Hu C, Chen Z, Zhang H, Liu S. Design and fabrication of a magnetic propulsion system for self-propelled capsule endoscope. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng* 2010; **57**: 2891-2902 [PMID: 20542758 DOI: 10.1109/TBME.2010.2051947]
188 **Yang S**, Park K, Kim J, Kim TS, Cho IJ, Yoon ES. Autonomous locomotion of capsule endoscope in gastrointestinal tract. *Conf Proc IEEE Eng Med Biol Soc* 2011; **2011**: 6659-6663 [PMID: 22255866 DOI: 10.1109/IEMBS.2011.6091642]
189 **Valdastri P**, Quaglia C, Buselli E, Arezzo A, Di Lorenzo N, Morino M, Menciassi A, Dario P. A magnetic internal mechanism for precise orientation of the camera in wireless endoluminal applications. *Endoscopy* 2010; **42**: 481-486 [PMID: 20506065 DOI: 10.1055/s-0029-1244170]
190 **Swain P**, Toor A, Volke F, Keller J, Gerber J, Rabinovitz E, Rothstein RI. Remote magnetic manipulation of a wireless capsule endoscope in the esophagus and stomach of humans (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **71**: 1290-1293 [PMID: 20417507 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.01.064]
191 **Kim HM**, Choi JS, Cho JH. A pilot trial of ambulatory monitoring of gastric motility using a modified magnetic capsule endoscope. *J Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2014; **20**: 261-264 [PMID: 24840379 DOI: 10.5056/jnm.2014.20.2.261]
192 **Keller J**, Fibbe C, Volke F, Gerber J, Mosse AC, Reimann-Zawadzki M, Rabinovitz E, Layer P, Schmitt D, Andresen V, Rosien U, Swain P. Inspection of the human stomach using remote-controlled capsule endoscopy: a feasibility study in healthy volunteers (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **73**: 22-28 [PMID: 21067740 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.08.053]
193 **Rey JF**, Ogata H, Hosoe N, Ohtsuka K, Ogata N, Ikeda K, Aihara H, Pangtay I, Hibi T, Kudo SE, Tajiri H. Blinded nonrandomized comparative study of gastric examination with a magnetically guided capsule endoscope and standard videoendoscope. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **75**: 373-381 [PMID: 22154417 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.09.030]
194 **Denzer UW**, Rösch T, Hoytat B, Abdel-Hamid M, Hebuterne X, Vanbiervielt G, Filippi J, Ogata H, Hosoe N, Ohtsuka K, Ogata N, Ikeda K, Aihara H, Kudo S, Tajiri H, Treszl A, Wegscheider K, Greff M, Rey J. Magnetically Guided Capsule Versus Conventional Gastroscopy for Upper Abdominal Complaints: A Prospective Blinded Study. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2014; **49**: 101-107 [PMID: 24618504 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0000000000000110]
195 **Pasricha T**, Smith BF, Mitchell VR, Fang B, Brooks ER, Gerding JS, Washington MK, Valdastri P, Obstein KL. Controlled colonic insufflation by a remotely triggered capsule for improved mucosal visualization. *Endoscopy* 2014; **46**: 614-618 [PMID: 24845802 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1365497]
196 **Obstein KL**, Battaglia S, Smith BF, Gerding JS, Valdastri P. Novel approach for colonic insufflation via an untethered capsule (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **77**: 516-517 [PMID: 23410707 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.10.010]
197 **Gorlewicz JL**, Battaglia S, Smith BF, Ciuti G, Gerding J, Menciassi A, Obstein KL, Valdastri P, Webster RJ. Wireless insufflation of the gastrointestinal tract. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng* 2013; **60**: 1225-1233 [PMID: 23212312 DOI: 10.1109/TBME.2012.2230631]
198 **Natali CD**, Beccani M, Obstein KL, Valdastri P. A wireless

platform for in vivo measurement of resistance properties of the gastrointestinal tract. *Physiol Meas* 2014; **35**: 1197-1214 [PMID: 24852810 DOI: 10.1088/0967-3334/35/7/1197]

199 **Woods SP**, Constandinou TG. Wireless capsule endoscope for targeted drug delivery: mechanics and design considerations. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng* 2013; **60**: 945-953 [PMID: 23192476 DOI: 10.1109/TBME.2012.2228647]

200 **Valdastri P**, Quaglia C, Susilo E, Menciassi A, Dario P, Ho CN, Anhoeck G, Schurr MO. Wireless therapeutic endoscopic capsule: in vivo experiment. *Endoscopy* 2008; **40**: 979-982 [PMID: 19065478 DOI: 10.1055/s-0028-1103424]

201 **Schostek S**, Schurr MO. European research on wireless endoscopy--the VECTOR project. *Stud Health Technol Inform* 2013; **189**: 193-199 [PMID: 23739381]

202 **Yim S**, Gultepe E, Gracias DH, Sitti M. Biopsy using a magnetic capsule endoscope carrying, releasing, and retrieving untethered microgrippers. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng* 2014; **61**: 513-521 [PMID: 24108454 DOI: 10.1109/TBME.2013.2283369]

203 **Pezzoli A**. Wireless endoscopy capsules should not be released in the environment. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **80**: 191-192 [PMID: 24950652 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2014.02.021]

204 **Pezzoli A**, Ricci N, Fusetti N, Zelante A, Carella A, Gullini S. Reactivation of used endoscopic capsules: A pilot study. *Dig Liver Dis* 2011; **43**: S160 [DOI: 10.1016/S1590-8658(11)60264-8]

205 **Chen X**, Ran ZH, Tong JL. A meta-analysis of the yield of capsule endoscopy compared to double-balloon enteroscopy in patients with small bowel diseases. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 4372-4378 [PMID: 17708614]

206 **Leung WK**, Ho SS, Suen BY, Lai LH, Yu S, Ng EK, Ng SS, Chiu PW, Sung JJ, Chan FK, Lau JY. Capsule endoscopy or angiography in patients with acute overt obscure gastrointestinal bleeding: a prospective randomized study with long-term follow-up. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 1370-1376 [PMID: 22825363 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2012.212]

207 **Wang Z**, Chen JQ, Liu JL, Qin XG, Huang Y. CT enterography in obscure gastrointestinal bleeding: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Med Imaging Radiat Oncol* 2013; **57**: 263-273 [PMID: 23721134 DOI: 10.1111/1754-9485.12035]

208 **Chong AK**, Taylor A, Miller A, Hennessy O, Connell W, Desmond P. Capsule endoscopy vs. push enteroscopy and enteroclysis in suspected small-bowel Crohn's disease. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2005; **61**: 255-261 [PMID: 15729235]

P- Reviewer: Konishi K, Luo HS **S- Editor**: Tian YL
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Zhang DN

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.37

World J Gastrointest Endosc 2015 January 16; 7(1): 37-44
ISSN 1948-5190 (online)

REVIEW

Endoscopic ultrasound-guided biliary drainage as an alternative to percutaneous drainage and surgical bypass

Varayu Prachayakul, Pitulak Aswakul

Varayu Prachayakul, Siriraj GI Endoscopy Center, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Internal Medicine, Siriraj Hospital, Faculty of Medicine, Mahidol University, Bangkok 10700, Thailand
Pitulak Aswakul, Liver and Digestive Institute, Samitivej Sukhumvit Hospital, Bangkok 10120, Thailand
Author contributions: Prachayakul V designed the concept; Prachayakul V and Aswakul P reviewed that literature, wrote and revised the manuscript.
Conflict-of-interest: Prachayakul V and Aswakul P declared no conflict of interest regarded this article.

Correspondence to: Varayu Prachayakul, MD, Siriraj GI Endoscopy Center, Division of Gastroenterology Department of Internal Medicine, Siriraj Hospital, Mahidol University, Bangkok 10700, Thailand. kaiyjr@gmail.com
Telephone: +66-818-654646
Fax: +66-241-15013
Received: September 26, 2014
Peer-review started: September 28, 2014
First decision: November 19, 2014
Revised: November 21, 2014
Accepted: December 16, 2014
Article in press: December 17, 2014
Published online: January 16, 2015

Abstract

Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography had been a treatment modality of choice for both benign and malignant biliary tract obstruction for more than half century, with a very high clinical success rate and low complications. But in certain circumstances, such as advanced and locally advanced pancreatobiliary malignancies (pancreatic cancer, cholangiocarcinoma, ampullary tumor) and tight benign strictures, endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) fails. Up to this point, the only alternative interventions for these conditions were percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage or surgery. Endoscopic ultrasound guided interventions was introduced for a couple decades with the better visualization and achievement of the pancreatobiliary tract. And it's still in the process of ongoing development. The inventions of new techniques and accessories lead to more feasibility of high-ended procedures. Endoscopic ultrasound guided biliary drainage was a novel treatment modality for the patient who failed ERCP with the less invasive technique comparing to surgical bypass. The technical and clinical success was high with acceptable complications. Regarded the ability to drain the biliary tract internally without an exploratory laparotomy, this treatment modality became a very interesting procedures for many endosonographers, worldwide, in a short period. We have reviewed the literature and suggest that endoscopic ultrasound-guided biliary drainage is also an option, and one with a high probability of success, for biliary drainage in the patients who failed conventional endoscopic drainage.

Key words: Endoscopic ultrasound; Endoscopic ultrasound; Biliary drainage; Choledochoduodenostomy; Hepaticogastrostomy; Technique

Core tip: Failure of endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography occurs in 5%-10% of the cases from many etiologies. However, there are few alternative options for biliary drainage up to the present time. Percutaneous biliary drainage and surgical bypass have their own drawbacks. Endoscopic ultrasound guided biliary drainage (EUS-BD) is a new platform with a very high technical and clinical success rate with

an acceptable complications. This review focused on the techniques, instruments including tips and tricks of this treatment modality. EUS-BD would become another alternative options for biliary drainage for both benign and malignant conditions in the future.

Prachayakul V, Aswakul P. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided biliary drainage as an alternative to percutaneous drainage and surgical bypass. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; 7(1): 37-44 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5190/full/v7/i1/37.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.37

INTRODUCTION

Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) was first introduced by Demling and Classen[1] in 1970 and is now the treatment of choice for pancreatobiliary diseases. It was originally used as a diagnostic tool, but since the development of magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and computed tomography (CT), which provide superior soft tissue details of the pancreatobiliary tract, ERCP has been used exclusively for therapeutic purposes. Pancreaticobiliary obstructions are the most common cause of pancreatobiliary disease. Because of the development of ever better endoscopy instruments and technologies, the overall success rate of ERCP is now 90% to 95% with a complication rate of 5% to 7%[2-16]. Selective bile duct cannulation, if performed by experienced endoscopists, is an effective treatment for over 90% of cases of pancreatobiliary disease without anatomical obstructions. It is not effective in only 3% to 5% of cases, usually due to gastroduodenal obstruction, failed cannulation, distorted ampullae, altered anatomy, a periampullary diverticulum, or previous enteral stents. In cases of failed ERCP, patients are usually referred for either percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage (PTBD) or surgical bypass. Both these procedures have high rates of undesirable complications. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided biliary drainage (EUS-BD) is a new technique that was developed within the last decade. It is an attractive alternative to PTBD or surgery when ERCP fails, but there is no strong evidence-based data on which procedure is best in this setting. We have reviewed the literature and summarize the advantages and disadvantages of PTBD, surgical bypass, and EUS-BD, including which technique is best for different clinical situations and how to maximize procedural success and reduce complications for each method.

Percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage

Percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage (PTBD) is a treatment option for patients for whom ERCP was not successful. The first report on PTBD was in 1961 by Catalano *et al*[17], and it was the treatment of choice for biliary drainage for more than two decades. The technical success rate for PTBD ranges from 75% to 100% and the clinical success rate ranges from 65% to 92%. The complication rate ranges from 9% to 31%[18-21]. Ho *et al*[22] published a review article on why PTBD should be considered first-line treatment for biliary drainage. Data showed that PTBD was superior than endoscopic biliary drainage in malignant hilar biliary obstruction with a technical success rate of 89% *vs* 41%, respectively ($P < 0.001$) and complication rates of 52% and 18%, respectively ($P = 0.04$). The data on the best type of drainage for distal CBD obstruction was inconclusive. PTBD is successful even in patients who have poor performance status. It also takes less procedural time and has few complications. The drawbacks are that it cannot be used in the presence of moderate to marked ascites and the fact that bile drainage is external, which impairs the patient's quality of life and involves difficulty in taking care of the catheter.

Surgical bypass

Surgical bypass is another treatment option after failed ERCP or unresectable hilar cholangiocarcinoma. Glazer *et al*[23] published a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials of immediate stent placement *vs* surgical bypass in the palliative management of malignant biliary obstruction and found that there was significantly less recurrent biliary obstruction after surgical bypass than after stent placement (RR 0.14, 95%CI: 0.03-0.63, $P < 0.01$). The technical success rates (RR 0.99, 95%CI: 0.93-1.05; $P = 0.67$) and complication rates (RR 1.54, 95%CI: 0.87-2.71; $P = 0.14$) were not significantly different. Despite the more invasive approach, surgery produced better drainage; the drainage was internal, which had less effect on the patient's quality of life; and the interval to recurrent biliary occlusion was longer. Unfortunately, this technique is only suitable for patients who are good surgical candidates, which limits its use in cases of advanced malignant biliary obstruction.

EUS-BD

EUS-BD has been increasingly used as a minimally invasive alternative to surgery or radiologic intervention for biliary drainage after failed ERCP. EUS-BD can be performed *via* the papillary or gastrointestinal lumen. In the transpapillary route, rendezvous retrograde or antegrade stenting is used. For gastrointestinal luminal access, choledochoduodenostomy or hepaticogastrostomy is used, depending on the desired site of access. Artifon *et al*[24] conducted a randomized trial of EUS-guided choledochoduodenostomy or percutaneous drainage for unresectable distal biliary obstruction after failed ERCP. Technical success and clinical success were 100% in both groups. The complication rate for PTBD was 15.3% and the complication rate for EUD-BD was 25% ($P = 0.2$), and the cost of the procedures was similar (7570 USD and 5573 USD respectively, $P = 0.39$). Khashab *et al*[25] also conducted a trial of PTBD ($n = 51$) and EUS-BD ($n = 22$) after failed ERCP. Their technical success rate was higher in the PTBD group than the EUS-BD

Table 1 Advanvtage and disadvantage of puncturing sites

Route of access	
Extrahepatic route	Intrahepatic route
Easy approach (especially for large-caliber CBD)	The duct to be punctured is far from the scope
The puncture site is close to the scope	Easier scope positioning to achieve desired direction from the punctured duct
More difficult scope positioning to achieve desired direction from the punctured duct (rendezvous)	Easy scope handling
Easy guidewire negotiation and neo-tract creation (EUS-BD)	Difficult guidewire negotiation and neo-tract creation
Difficult scope handling	Higher risk of bleeding
	Higher risk of bile leakage

CBD: Common bile duct; EUS-BD: Endoscopic ultrasound guided biliary drainage.

group (100% *vs* 86.4%, $P = 0.007$), and their clinical success rates were 92.2% *vs* 86.4%, $P = 0.40$. PTBD was associated with higher adverse events (index procedure: 39.2% *vs* 15.7%), but stent patency and survival rate were equivalent in both groups. PTBD cost more than twice as much to perform as EUS-BD ($P = 0.004$), mainly because the re-intervention rate was higher (80.4% *vs* 15.7%, $P < 0.001$). Multicenter studies and other cases reports and case series[26-41] have confirmed the safety and efficacy of EUS-BD alone. In the authors' opinions, there was no one best approach among these three platforms for patients who failed ERCP. We recommend surgical bypass for patients with both duodenal and biliary obstructions who are good surgical candidates, but EUS-BD might be better than PTBD in patients with a large volume of ascites or patients who refuse external drainage. First-line treatment options depend on each institution's facilities, the clinician's expertise, and the patient's preferences after receiving enough information to accurately evaluate each procedure's strengths, weaknesses, and impact on quality of life.

EUS-guided biliary drainage

The use of endoscopic ultrasound-guided cholangiography was initially described by Wiersema *et al*[42] in 1996. The first EUS-guided biliary drainage was reported by Giovannini *et al*[43] in 2001. In 2004, Mallory *et al*[44] reported the first case of EUS-guided ERCP using the rendezvous technique.

Endoscopic ultrasound-guided biliary drainage can be classified into two major groups: the transpapillary approach (rendezvous retrograde and antegrade stent insertion) and the transmural approach (choledochoduodenostomy and hepaticogastrostomy)[45-48].

When to use the transpapillary rendezvous route

EUS-guided biliary drainage should be reserved for patients for whom ERCP was not successful. Some experts recommend the transpapillary (rendezvous) approach before the transmural approach[49-51]. Rendezvous technique is impossible if the ampulla is not accessible; but, even in patients with accessible ampullae, the rendezvous procedure can be difficult because it is necessary to change from the echoscope to the duodenoscope and the railroad technique during guide wire grasping is not always easy. In the authors' opinion, the advantage of the procedure is that it's not necessary to create a bilo-entereic tract, which can sometimes produce leakage and bleeding. In patients with surgically altered anatomy in which the anastomotic opening could not initially be seen and the access to the opening was not too difficult. When the position of the echoscope is good enough and dilatation and the guidewire can be passed down to the duodenum easily, rendezvous is a good option. If access is through the intrahepatic ducts (left lobe segments Ⅱ or Ⅲ) or extra-hepatic duct [common bile duct, (CBD)] the route depends on the location of the obstruction and the expertise of the endoscopist. If the site of obstruction is located above the proximal to mid-CBD, the intra-hepatic route is best. For distal obstruction with large CBD caliber, the extrahepatic route is the ideal choice.

Each route has advantages and disadvantages. It is easier to make the puncture using the extra-hepatic route, but the echoscope is in an upward curving position that makes it more difficult to control and easier to slip out. The puncture and guidewire placement are more difficult in the transmural route, but handling the scope is easier.

When to use the transmural route

The transmural route of EUS-guided biliary drainage can be achieved through an EUS-guided choledochoduodenostomy or an EUS-guided hepaticogastrostomy. The site of puncture depends on the location of the obstruction. If the obstruction site is distally located, choledochoduodenostomy is procedure of choice, while hilar obstructions are best served by a hepaticogastrostomy. It is easier to perform the puncture and handle the scope in segment Ⅱ of the left lobe of the liver[52,53] and the endoscopist who performed the procedure has to confirm that the puncture site is not in the esophagus in order to avoid higher risk of mediastinitis. Even though some experts use the right lobe[54], it is not yet standard of practice.

Tips for EUS-guided biliary drainage

Where to puncture: We summarized the advantages and disadvantages of extrahepatic and intrahepatic duct puncture in Table 1.

Table 2 Compare the two neo-tract creation methods

Neo-tract creation methods	
Cauterization	Non-cauterization
Easy neo-tract creation with no need for forceful manipulation	More difficult and forceful manipulation, especially when the intervening tissue is thick or the direction is inappropriate
More tissue injury from thermal burn	Less injury, smaller diameter of the neo-tract
The procedure takes less time	Lower risk of bile leakage or bleeding
More complications, especially bile leakage or perforation	

Table 3 Compare the two neo-tract dilation methods

Dilatation methods	
Balloon dilation	Graded dilation
Radial force leads to bigger neo-tract diameter (easier but greater risk for bile leakage, bleeding and perforation)	Axial force creates a smaller neo-tract. More difficult, but less leakage and less bleeding)
Easier stent insertion	Stent insertion can be more difficult
Only a single dilation session is needed and there are fewer guidewire exchanges	More sessions of dilation are needed and there are more frequent guidewire exchanges

How to create the bilo-enteric tract

There are two major ways to create a bilo-enteric tract: cauterization with a needle knife or small caliber cystotome especially 6 Fr in diameter[55-66] and non-cauterization with a tapered-tip catheter[67] or Soehendra stent retriever[68]. Neo-tract creation is followed by neo-tract dilation. The advantages and disadvantages of these two approaches are summarized in Table 2.

Neo-tract dilation can also be performed two ways: balloon dilation or graded dilation. Both methods are evaluated in Table 3.

There is no best approach. The technique of choice depends on the individual endoscopist's expertise. If balloon dilation must be used, the authors recommend the small size (4 mm diameter) balloon dilator.

What is the best stent?

In the early years of EUS-guided biliary drainage, the most commonly used stent was plastic; but many experts used fully covered, self-expandable metal stents (FCSEMS) instead of plastic stents and reported good outcomes[69-71]. Many types of metallic stents were developed for this purpose. Even though metal stents create a wider lumen with better drainage ability, they are more expensive and there is a risk of migration. Recently, Galasso *et al*[72] developed a stent suitable for EUS-guided hepaticogastrostomy called the Gio-Bor stent. It is a half-covered SEMS stent (Figure 1). The authors recommend an FCSEMS or partial CSEMS stent 40 to 60 mm in length for EUS-CD and 80 to 100 mm in length for EUS-HG. The small introducer (7 Fr) FCSEMS and partial CSEMS are shorter procedures and need fewer guidewire exchanges. However, there was a multicenter Japanese study[38] demonstrate that higher bile leakage was associated with plastic stent placement, therefore there was a trend towards to preference of using covered SEMS to prevent this complication.

What are the commonly encountered problems?

How to locate the puncture site: The site of puncture should be evaluated both endosonographically and fluoroscopically. Endosonographic tracing of the left intrahepatic bile duct was important in guiding the tip of needle and helping the endoscopist select the segment most suitable for puncture and easy guidewire negotiation. The fluoroscopic view can also help the endoscopist assess the best angle for bile duct puncture and easy neo-tract creation. Interestingly, if the scope's tip is perpendicular to the gastroduodenal wall, it will make the dilation process more difficult, so we recommend a slightly tangential angle. If the tip of the scope is too angulated, it will make the puncture more difficult. The distance between the punctured duct and the probe should be no more than 1-2 cm. Before starting the puncture, check Doppler color flow to avoid the intervening vessel.

DIFFICULT GUIDEWIRE NEGOTIATION

Using a 0.025 stiff guidewire (VisiGlide) or a 0.035 hydrophilic tip guidewire will make guidewire negotiation easier. The direction of the needle tip will directly affect guidewire manipulation. If the direction of the needle is opposite to the desired guidewire direction, manipulation will be really difficult. Moving the guidewire back and forth just a little bit (jiggling maneuver) will help change the guidewire direction. Using guidewires designed for manual twisting maneuvers or that have accessories, such as Terumo or ViziGlide guidewires, will make guidewire manipulation easier.

Guidewire shearing or knotting

Most endoscopists who perform EUS-guided biliary drainage have experience with guidewire shearing or knotting during the procedure. Saxena *et al*[73] and

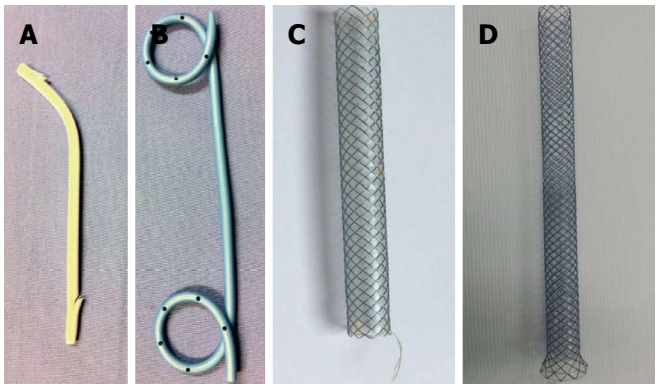


Figure 1 The different types of stents used in Endoscopic ultrasound guided biliary drainage. A: Plastic stent; B: Double-pigtail plastic stent; C: Fully covered, self-expandable metal stent; D: The Gio-Bor stent.

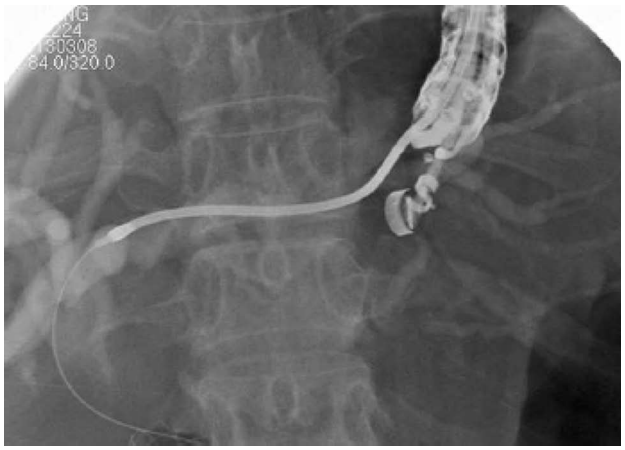


Figure 2 The Soehendra stent retriever was used in neo-tract creation.

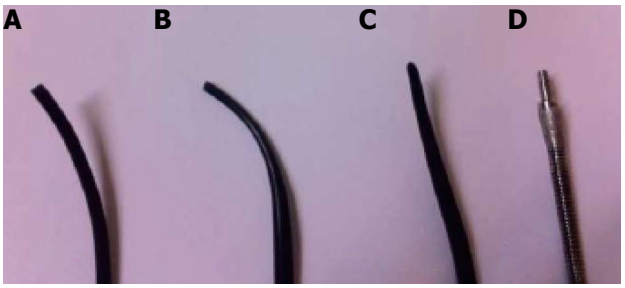


Figure 3 Different types of catheter tips. A: Soehendra stent dilator; B: Tapered tip catheter; C: Sharp tip catheter (self-made); D: Soehendra stent retriever.

Khashub *et al*[74] recommend flushing the channel with water and using a special type of needle, such as an access needle, which is designed to resolve these problems. However, in the authors' experience, this specially designed needle was not sharp enough in some situations and did not prevent guidewire shearing. We found that the way to prevent shearing and knotting was to push, not pull, the guidewire back, even if the desired duct was not yet punctured, and to exchange the needle for the small-sized dilator or tapered-tip catheter after the guidewire was looped and continue the guidewire negotiation later on. We have had no problem with shearing or knotting if we followed these guidelines.

How to deal with thickened soft tissue between the puncture site and bile duct

The distance between the puncture site and the desired duct is a very important factor in neo-tract creation. If the distance is longer, it is more difficult to penetrate through the tissue and pierce the bile duct. Another factor is the stiffness of the tissue between the puncture site and the bile duct. If the patient has liver fibrosis, the tissue is stiffer and this can make creation of a neo-tract more difficult. If difficulty is encountered, we recommended that the endoscopist should, firstly, re-check the position of the scope tip to make sure it is not perpendicular to the gastric wall. If graded dilation is being performed, change the dilating catheter to a smaller size or a catheter with a tapered tip, use a tapered-tip cannulation catheter, or re-shape the tip of the catheter by cutting it to a needle shape. Dilating with a Soehendra stent retriever, which has a drilling effect, might also be useful (Figure 2). If all of the above methods fail, cauterization may be necessary. Different types of catheter tips are shown in Figure 3.

Complications can occur if the needle knife is used with the Odd ratio of 12.4[75]. To minimize possible tissue damage during neo-tract creation, only open the knife half of its full length and cauterize until it enters the duct. In process of dilation, the dilator should be inserted after the knife is used. For cystotome usage, it very important to push the cystotome catheter against the mural and bile duct wall firmly, before starting the cauterization (this technique would help to enter the bile duct easily).

HOW TO MINIMIZE THE COMPLICATIONS DURING NEO-TRACT DILATION

Generally, the least chance of bile leakage and bleeding if the diameter of neotract is as small as possible. Therefore, the authors recommend not to dilate the neo-tract larger than the size of stent introducer (always not more than 8.5 Fr). For graded dilation technique, 8.5 Fr size is suitable for Soehendra dilator and only 7 Fr size is suitable for Soehendra stent retriever whereas smaller balloon especially not more than 4 mm in diameter is suitable for balloon dilation.

FUTURE RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT

The development of single step device which might be more suitable to each specific procedure would be helpful the help endoscopist to overcome the cubersome techniques such as multiple guidewire exchanges and would make the procedure time shorter; Smaller introducer (7 Fr) of smaller sized covered SEMSs (6 or 8 mm in diameter) would be benefit for less complications and shorter procedure time; Randomized control trial that EUS-BD as the treatment of choice in some particular conditions such as surgical altered anatomy would be interesting; The possibility of using EUS-BD as the preferable options than transpapillary drainage should be widely discussed and prospective study should be conducted.

CONCLUSION

EUS-guided biliary drainage is safe and effective when performed by an experienced endoscopist, and is an alternative to PTBD and surgical bypass after failed ERCP. Unfortunately, it use is still limited to tertiary care hospitals with advanced-complex endoscopy units. Clinicians will need to choose a treatment method based on each patient's status, preferences, and the facilities of the hospitals in their area.

REFERENCES

1 **Demling L**, Classen M. [Duodenojejunoscopy]. *Dtsch Med Wochenschr* 1970; **95**: 1427-1428 passim [PMID: 5431943]
2 **Dumonceau JM**, Vonlaufen A. Pancreatic endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP). *Endoscopy* 2007; **39**: 124-130 [PMID: 17327971]
3 **Fabbri C**, Luigiano C, Lisotti A, Cennamo V, Virgilio C, Caletti G, Fusaroli P. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided treatments: are we getting evidence based--a systematic review. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 8424-8448 [PMID: 25024600 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i26.8424]
4 **Dumonceau JM**, Andriulli A, Elmunzer BJ, Mariani A, Meister T, Deviere J, Marek T, Baron TH, Hassan C, Testoni PA, Kapral C. Prophylaxis of post-ERCP pancreatitis: European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy (ESGE) Guideline - updated June 2014. *Endoscopy* 2014; **46**: 799-815 [PMID: 25148137 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1377875]
5 **Qian Y**, Huang J, Zhang Y, Fan ZN. Cannulation of the intradiverticular papilla using a duodenoscope: is it a safe method? *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 10217-10218 [PMID: 25110452 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i29.10217]
6 **Song BJ**, Kang DH. Prevention of postendoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography pancreatitis: the endoscopic technique. *Clin Endosc* 2014; **47**: 217-221 [PMID: 24944984 DOI: 10.5946/ce.2014.47.3.217]
7 **Zang J**, Zhang C, Gao J. Guidewire-assisted transpancreatic sphincterotomy for difficult biliary cannulation: a prospective randomized controlled trial. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 2014; **24**: 429-433 [PMID: 24910935]
8 **Okabe Y**, Ishida Y, Kuraoka K, Ushijima T, Tsuruta O. Endoscopic bile duct and/or pancreatic duct cannulation technique for patients with surgically altered gastrointestinal anatomy. *Dig Endosc* 2014; **26** Suppl 2: 122-126 [PMID: 24750161 DOI: 10.1111/den.12274]
9 **Skinner M**, Popa D, Neumann H, Wilcox CM, Mönkemüller K. ERCP with the overtube-assisted enteroscopy technique: a systematic review. *Endoscopy* 2014; **46**: 560-572 [PMID: 24839188 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1365698]
10 **Choudhary A**, Winn J, Siddique S, Arif M, Arif Z, Hammoud GM, Puli SR, Ibdah JA, Bechtold ML. Effect of precut sphincterotomy on post-endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography pancreatitis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 4093-4101 [PMID: 24744601 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i14.4093]
11 **Artifon EL**, Moura RN, Otoch JP. Difficult cannulation: what should I do before EUS guided access? *Rev Gastroenterol Peru* 2014; **34**: 53-57 [PMID: 24721959]
12 **Myung DS**, Park CH, Koh HR, Lim SU, Jun CH, Ki HS, Park SY, Rew JS. Cap-assisted ERCP in patients with difficult cannulation due to periampullary diverticulum. *Endoscopy* 2014; **46**: 352-355 [PMID: 24549783 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1365060]
13 **Kubiliun NM**, Elmunzer BJ. Preventing pancreatitis after endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography. *Gastrointest Endosc Clin N Am* 2013; **23**: 769-786 [PMID: 24079789 DOI: 10.1016/j.giec.2013.06.003]
14 **Ito K**, Horaguchi J, Fujita N, Noda Y, Kobayashi G, Koshita S, Kanno Y, Ogawa T, Masu K, Hashimoto S. Clinical usefulness of double-guidewire technique for difficult biliary cannulation in endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography. *Dig Endosc* 2014; **26**: 442-449 [PMID: 23937334 DOI: 10.1111/den.12158]
15 **Tse F**, Yuan Y, Moayyedi P, Leontiadis GI. Guide wire-assisted cannulation for the prevention of post-ERCP pancreatitis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Endoscopy* 2013; **45**: 605-618 [PMID: 23807804 DOI: 10.1055/s-0032-1326640]
16 **Kobayashi G**, Fujita N, Imaizumi K, Irisawa A, Suzuki M, Murakami A, Oana S, Makino N, Komatsuda T, Yoneyama K. Wire-guided biliary cannulation technique does not reduce the risk of post-ERCP pancreatitis: multicenter randomized controlled trial. *Dig Endosc* 2013; **25**: 295-302 [PMID: 23368891 DOI: 10.1111/j.1443-1661.2012.01372.x]
17 **Catalano D**, Mariosa L, Miracco A, Mauro R. [Percutaneous cholangiography with biliary catheterization and drainage]. *Rass Int Clin Ter* 1961; **41**: 255-267 [PMID: 13691509]
18 **Leng JJ**, Zhang N, Dong JH. Percutaneous transhepatic and endoscopic biliary drainage for malignant biliary tract obstruction: a meta-analysis. *World J Surg Oncol* 2014; **12**: 272 [PMID: 25148939]
19 **Garcarek J**, Kurcz J, Guziński M, Janczak D, Sasiadek M. Ten years single center experience in percutaneous transhepatic decompression of biliary tree in patients with malignant obstructive jaundice. *Adv Clin Exp Med* 2012; **21**: 621-632 [PMID: 23356199]
20 **Audisio RA**, Morosi C, Bozzetti F, Cozzi G, Bellomi M, Pisani P, Pestalozza A, Gennari L, Severini A. The outcome of cholangitis after percutaneous biliary drainage in neoplastic jaundice. *HPB Surg* 1993; **6**: 287-293 [PMID: 8217925]
21 **Stanley J**, Gobien RP, Cunningham J, Andriole J. Biliary decompression: an institutional comparison of percutaneous and endoscopic methods. *Radiology* 1986; **158**: 195-197 [PMID: 2416006]
22 **Ho CS**, Warkentin AE. Evidence-based decompression in malignant biliary obstruction. *Korean J Radiol* 2012; **13** Suppl 1: S56-S61 [PMID: 22563288 DOI: 10.3348/kjr.2012.13.S1.S56]
23 **Glazer ES**, Hornbrook MC, Krouse RS. A meta-analysis of randomized trials: immediate stent placement vs. surgical bypass in the palliative management of malignant biliary obstruction. *J Pain Symptom Manage* 2014; **47**: 307-314 [PMID: 23830531 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpainsymman.2013.03.013]
24 **Artifon EL**, Aparicio D, Paione JB, Lo SK, Bordini A, Rabello C, Otoch JP, Gupta K. Biliary drainage in patients with unresectable, malignant obstruction where ERCP fails: endoscopic ultrasonography-guided chole-

dochoduodenostomy versus percutaneous drainage. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2012; **46**: 768-774 [PMID: 22810111 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e31825f264c]
25 **Khashab MA**, Valeshabad AK, Afghani E, Singh VK, Kumbhari V, Messallam A, Saxena P, El Zein M, Lennon AM, Canto MI, Kalloo AN. A Comparative Evaluation of EUS-Guided Biliary Drainage and Percutaneous Drainage in Patients with Distal Malignant Biliary Obstruction and Failed ERCP. *Dig Dis Sci* 2014; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25081224]
26 **Dhir V**, Artifon EL, Gupta K, Vila JJ, Maselli R, Frazao M, Maydeo A. Multicenter study on endoscopic ultrasound-guided expandable biliary metal stent placement: choice of access route, direction of stent insertion, and drainage route. *Dig Endosc* 2014; **26**: 430-435 [PMID: 23941261 DOI: 10.1111/den.12153]
27 **Gupta K**, Perez-Miranda M, Kahaleh M, Artifon EL, Itoi T, Freeman ML, de-Serna C, Sauer B, Giovannini M. Endoscopic ultrasound-assisted bile duct access and drainage: multicenter, long-term analysis of approach, outcomes, and complications of a technique in evolution. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2014; **48**: 80-87 [PMID: 23632351 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e31828c6822]
28 **Iqbal S**, Friedel DM, Grendell JH, Stavropoulos SN. Outcomes of endoscopic-ultrasound-guided cholangiopancreatography: a literature review. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2013; **2013**: 869214 [PMID: 23573080 DOI: 10.1155/2013/869214]
29 **Artifon EL**, Ferreira FC, Sakai P. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided biliary drainage. *Korean J Radiol* 2012; **13** Suppl 1: S74-S82 [PMID: 22563291 DOI: 10.3348/kjr.2012.13.S1.S74]
30 **Luz LP**, Al-Haddad MA, Sey MS, DeWitt JM. Applications of endoscopic ultrasound in pancreatic cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 7808-7818 [PMID: 24976719 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i24.7808]
31 **Altonbary AY**, Deiab AG, Bahgat MH. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided choledechoduodenostomy for palliative biliary drainage of obstructing pancreatic head mass. *Endosc Ultrasound* 2014; **3**: 137-140 [PMID: 24955345 DOI: 10.4103/2303-9027.131043]
32 **Will U**, Fueldner F, Kern C, Meyer F. EUS-Guided Bile Duct Drainage (EUBD) in 95 Patients. *Ultraschall Med* 2014; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 24854133]
33 **Hamada T**, Isayama H, Nakai Y, Kogure H, Yamamoto N, Kawakubo K, Takahara N, Uchino R, Mizuno S, Sasaki T, Togawa O, Matsubara S, Ito Y, Hirano K, Tsujino T, Tada M, Koike K. Transmural biliary drainage can be an alternative to transpapillary drainage in patients with an indwelling duodenal stent. *Dig Dis Sci* 2014; **59**: 1931-1938 [PMID: 24839917 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-014-3062-1]
34 **Iwashita T**, Doi S, Yasuda I. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided biliary drainage: a review. *Clin J Gastroenterol* 2014; **7**: 94-102 [PMID: 24765215]
35 **Kumta NA**, Kedia P, Kahaleh M. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided biliary drainage: an update. *Curr Treat Options Gastroenterol* 2014; **12**: 154-168 [PMID: 24623591 DOI: 10.1007/s11938-014-0011-1]
36 **Takada J**, Carmo AM, Artifon EL. EUS-guided biliary drainage for malignant biliary obstruction in patients with failed ERCP. *J Interv Gastroenterol* 2013; **3**: 76-81 [PMID: 24478923]
37 **Alvarez-Sánchez MV**, Jenssen C, Faiss S, Napoléon B. Interventional endoscopic ultrasonography: an overview of safety and complications. *Surg Endosc* 2014; **28**: 712-734 [PMID: 24196551 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-013-3260-5]
38 **Kawakubo K**, Isayama H, Kato H, Itoi T, Kawakami H, Hanada K, Ishiwatari H, Yasuda I, Kawamoto H, Itokawa F, Kuwatani M, Iiboshi T, Hayashi T, Doi S, Nakai Y. Multicenter retrospective study of endoscopic ultrasound-guided biliary drainage for malignant biliary obstruction in Japan. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Sci* 2014; **21**: 328-334 [PMID: 24026963 DOI: 10.1002/jhbp.27]
39 **Khashab MA**, Kumbhari V, Kalloo AN, Saxena P. EUS-guided biliary drainage by using a hepatogastrostomy approach. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **78**: 675 [PMID: 23953233 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.07.017]
40 **Tonozuka R**, Itoi T, Sofuni A, Itokawa F, Moriyasu F. Endoscopic double stenting for the treatment of malignant biliary and duodenal obstruction due to pancreatic cancer. *Dig Endosc* 2013; **25** Suppl 2: 100-108 [PMID: 23617659 DOI: 10.1111/den.12063]
41 **Sarkaria S**, Lee HS, Gaidhane M, Kahaleh M. Advances in endoscopic ultrasound-guided biliary drainage: a comprehensive review. *Gut Liver* 2013; **7**: 129-136 [PMID: 23560147 DOI: 10.5009/gnl.2013.7.2.129]
42 **Wiersema MJ**, Sandusky D, Carr R, Wiersema LM, Erdel WC, Frederick PK. Endosonography-guided cholangiopancreatography. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1996; **43**: 102-106 [PMID: 8635700]
43 **Giovannini M**, Moutardier V, Pesenti C, Bories E, Lelong B, Delpero JR. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided bilioduodenal anastomosis: a new technique for biliary drainage. *Endoscopy* 2001; **33**: 898-900 [PMID: 11571690]
44 **Mallery S**, Matlock J, Freeman ML. EUS-guided rendezvous drainage of obstructed biliary and pancreatic ducts: Report of 6 cases. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2004; **59**: 100-107 [PMID: 14722561]
45 **Kahaleh M**, Artifon EL, Perez-Miranda M, Gupta K, Itoi T, Binmoeller KF, Giovannini M. Endoscopic ultrasonography guided biliary drainage: summary of consortium meeting, May 7th, 2011, Chicago. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 1372-1379 [PMID: 23538784 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i9.1372]
46 **Sarkaria S**, Sundararajan S, Kahaleh M. Endoscopic ultrasonographic access and drainage of the common bile duct. *Gastrointest Endosc Clin N Am* 2013; **23**: 435-452 [PMID: 23540968 DOI: 10.1016/j.giec.2012.12.013]
47 **Artifon EL**. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided biliary drainage. *Endosc Ultrasound* 2013; **2**: 61-63 [PMID: 24949366 DOI: 10.4103/2303-9027.117687]
48 **Park do H**. Endoscopic ultrasonography-guided hepaticogastrostomy. *Gastrointest Endosc Clin N Am* 2012; **22**: 271-80, ix [PMID: 22632949 DOI: 10.1016/j.giec.2012.04.009]
49 **Shami VM**, Kahaleh M. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided cholangiopancreatography and rendezvous techniques. *Dig Liver Dis* 2010; **42**: 419-424 [PMID: 19897427 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2009.09.009]
50 **Iwashita T**, Lee JG, Shinoura S, Nakai Y, Park DH, Muthusamy VR, Chang KJ. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided rendezvous for biliary access after failed cannulation. *Endoscopy* 2012; **44**: 60-65 [PMID: 22127960 DOI: 10.1055/s-0030-1256871]
51 **Kawakubo K**, Isayama H, Sasahira N, Nakai Y, Kogure H, Hamada T, Miyabayashi K, Mizuno S, Sasaki T, Ito Y, Yamamoto N, Hirano K, Tada M, Koike K. Clinical utility of an endoscopic ultrasound-guided rendezvous technique via various approach routes. *Surg Endosc* 2013; **27**: 3437-3443 [PMID: 23508814 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-013-2896-5]
52 **Khashab MA**, Dewitt J. EUS-guided biliary drainage: is it ready for prime time? Yes! *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **78**: 102-105 [PMID: 23820411 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.03.004]
53 **Perez-Miranda M**, De la Serna-Higuera C. EUS access to the biliary tree. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2013; **15**: 349 [PMID: 24014119 DOI: 10.1007/s11894-013-0349-x]
54 **Park SJ**, Choi JH, Park do H, Choi JH, Lee SS, Seo DW, Lee SK, Kim MH. Expanding indication: EUS-guided hepaticoduodenostomy for isolated right intrahepatic duct obstruction (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **78**: 374-380 [PMID: 23711555 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.04.183]
55 **Varadarajulu S**, Hawes RH. EUS-guided biliary drainage: taxing and not ready. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **78**: 742-743

[PMID: 24120336 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.06.009]
56 **Polkowski M**, Larghi A, Weynand B, Boustière C, Giovannini M, Pujol B, Dumonceau JM. Learning, techniques, and complications of endoscopic ultrasound (EUS)-guided sampling in gastroenterology: European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy (ESGE) Technical Guideline. *Endoscopy* 2012; **44**: 190-206 [PMID: 22180307]
57 **Belletrutti PJ**, Gerdes H, Schattner MA. Successful endoscopic ultrasound-guided transduodenal biliary drainage through a pre-existing duodenal stent. *JOP* 2010; **11**: 234-236 [PMID: 20442518]
58 **Artifon EL**, Takada J, Okawa L, Moura EG, Sakai P. EUS-guided choledochoduodenostomy for biliary drainage in unresectable pancreatic cancer: a case series. *JOP* 2010; **11**: 597-600 [PMID: 21068493]
59 **Prachayakul V**, Aswakul P, Kachintorn U. EUS-guided choledochoduodenostomy for biliary drainage using tapered-tip plastic stent with multiple fangs. *Endoscopy* 2011; **43** Suppl 2 UCTN: E109-E110 [PMID: 21424999 DOI: 10.1055/s-0030-1256140]
60 **Panpimanmas S**, Ratanachu-ek T. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided hepaticogastrostomy for hilar cholangiocarcinoma: the first trial in Thailand. *J Med Assoc Thai* 2011; **94** Suppl 2: S129-S134 [PMID: 21717892]
61 **Artifon EL**, Takada J, Okawa L, Ferreira F, Santos M, Moura EG, Otoch JP, Sakai P. Successful endoscopic ultrasound-guided overstenting biliary drainage through a pre-existing proximal migrated metal biliary stent. *Rev Gastroenterol Mex* 2011; **76**: 270-274 [PMID: 22041320]
62 **Jürgensen C**, Wentrup R, Zeitz M. Endoscopic ultrasound (EUS)-guided transduodenal drainage of an obstructed jejunal loop after hepaticojejunostomy as treatment for recurrent biliary sepsis. *Endoscopy* 2013; **45** Suppl 2 UCTN: E40-E41 [PMID: 23526508 DOI: 10.1055/s-0032-1325891]
63 **Sharaiha RZ**, Kalloo AN, Khashab MA. EUS-guided hepatoesophagostomy for transesophageal biliary drainage (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **76**: 227-228 [PMID: 22726492 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.01.044]
64 **Park do H**, Song TJ, Eum J, Moon SH, Lee SS, Seo DW, Lee SK, Kim MH. EUS-guided hepaticogastrostomy with a fully covered metal stent as the biliary diversion technique for an occluded biliary metal stent after a failed ERCP (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **71**: 413-419 [PMID: 20152319 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2009.10.015]
65 **Burmester E**, Niehaus J, Leineweber T, Huetteroth T. EUS-cholangio-drainage of the bile duct: report of 4 cases. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2003; **57**: 246-251 [PMID: 12556796]
66 **Püspök A**, Lomoschitz F, Dejaco C, Hejna M, Sautner T, Gangl A. Endoscopic ultrasound guided therapy of benign and malignant biliary obstruction: a case series. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 1743-1747 [PMID: 16086710]
67 **Prachayakul V**, Aswakul P. A novel technique for endoscopic ultrasound-guided biliary drainage. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 4758-4763 [PMID: 23922474 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i29.4758]
68 **Vila JJ**, Goñi S, Arrazubi V, Bolado F, Ostiz M, Javier Jiménez F. Endoscopic ultrasonography-guided transgastric biliary drainage aided by Soehendra stent retriever. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 959-960 [PMID: 20372144 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.690]
69 **Artifon EL**, Safatle-Ribeiro AV, Ferreira FC, Poli-de-Figueiredo L, Rasslan S, Carnevale F, Otoch JP, Sakai P, Kahaleh M. EUS-guided antegrade transhepatic placement of a self-expandable metal stent in hepatico-jejunal anastomosis. *JOP* 2011; **12**: 610-613 [PMID: 22072253]
70 **Eum J**, Park do H, Ryu CH, Kim HJ, Lee SS, Seo DW, Lee SK, Kim MH. EUS-guided biliary drainage with a fully covered metal stent as a novel route for natural orifice transluminal endoscopic biliary interventions: a pilot study (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **72**: 1279-1284 [PMID: 20870224 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.07.026]
71 **Lai LH**, Chan FK, Sung JJ, Chan AW, Lee KF. EUS-guided transduodenal biliary drainage. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **72**: 186-187; discussion 187 [PMID: 20430382 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.01.052]
72 **Galasso D**, Bories E, Caillol F, Forero Pineros EA, Pesenti C, Giovannini M. Feasibility of endoscopic ultrasound-guided hepaticogastrostomy in a patient with previous gastric banding. *Endoscopy* 2013; **45** Suppl 2 UCTN: E233-E234 [PMID: 23945925 DOI: 10.1055/s-0033-1344322]
73 **Saxena P**, Aguila G, Kumbhari V, Khashab MA. Untying the knot: technique of unraveling a guidewire knot created during EUS-guided biliary drainage. *Endoscopy* 2014; **46** Suppl 1 UCTN: E140-E141 [PMID: 24756263 DOI: 10.1055/s-0033-1359240]
74 **Khashab MA**, Dewitt J. Treatment and prevention of wire shearing during EUS-guided biliary drainage. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **76**: 921-923 [PMID: 22985651 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.05.018]
75 **Park do H**, Jang JW, Lee SS, Seo DW, Lee SK, Kim MH. EUS-guided biliary drainage with transluminal stenting after failed ERCP: predictors of adverse events and long-term results. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **74**: 1276-1284 [PMID: 21963067 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.07.054]

P- Reviewer: Murata A **S- Editor**: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Zhang DN

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.45

World J Gastrointest Endosc 2015 January 16; 7(1): 45-52
ISSN 1948-5190 (online)

Self-expandable metal stents for achalasia: Thinking out of the box!

Athanasios D Sioulas, Chrysoula Malli, George D Dimitriadis, Konstantinos Triantafyllou

Athanasios D Sioulas, Chrysoula Malli, George D Dimitriadis, Konstantinos Triantafyllou, Hepatogastroenterology Unit, Second Department of Internal Medicine and Research Institute, Attikon University General Hospital, Medical School, Athens University, 12462 Haidari, Greece

Author contributions: Sioulas AD searched the literature, drafted and finally approved the manuscript; Malli C searched the literature, reviewed the draft and finally approved the manuscript; Dimitriadis GD reviewed the draft and finally approved the manuscript; Triantafyllou K conceived the idea, reviewed the draft and finally approved the manuscript.

Correspondence to: Konstantinos Triantafyllou, Assistant Professor of Gastroenterology, Hepatogastroenterology Unit, Second Department of Internal Medicine and Research Institute, Attikon University General Hospital, Rimini 1, 12462 Haidari, Greece. ktriant@med.uoa.gr
Telephone: +30-210-5832090
Fax: +30-210-5326422

Received: August 22, 2014
Peer-review started: August 22, 2014
First decision: September 16, 2014
Revised: October 4, 2014
Accepted: November 7, 2014
Article in press: November 10, 2014
Published online: January 16, 2015

Abstract

Achalasia is a primary motor disorder of the esophagus diagnosed manometrically in the clinical setting of dysphagia to both solids and liquids. Currently established treatment options include pneumatic dilation, laparoscopic Heller myotomy, botulinum toxin injection performed endoscopically, oral agents that relax the lower esophageal sphincter and esophagectomy for refractory, end-stage disease. Despite their effectiveness, a significant proportion of patients eventually relapses and needs retreatment. In this setting, several new techniques are under investigation promising future enrichment of our therapeutic armamentarium for achalasic patients. Among them, peroral endoscopic myotomy and self-expandable metal stents placed across the gastro-esophageal junction represent the most encouraging modalities, as initial studies assessing their efficacy and safety indicate. This review highlights the role of self-expandable metal stents in the management of patients with achalasia. Their possible position in the therapeutic algorithm of achalasia along with established and novel techniques is also assessed. Finally, the need for large prospective randomized trials is underlined in order to elucidate the numerous relevant issues.

Key words: Achalasia; Self-expandable metal stents; Dysphagia; Endoscopy; Treatment

Core tip: Recommended treatment of patients with achalasia are associated with significant clinical relapse over subsequent months or years. Therefore, numerous innovative techniques are under evaluation. Self-expandable metal stents may represent a promising alternative according to initial studies. They may gain a place in the therapeutic algorithm of achalasia in the view of its different types and stages, patients' characteristics and other emerging modalities.

Sioulas AD, Malli C, Dimitriadis GD, Triantafyllou K. Self-expandable metal stents for achalasia: Thinking out of the box! *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; 7(1): 45-52 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5190/full/v7/i1/45.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.45

INTRODUCTION

Achalasia is a primary esophageal motility disorder characterized by aperistalsis in the distal portion of the esophageal body and incomplete or absent relaxation of the lower esophageal sphincter (LES). It is a disease of unknown cause; it pathophysiologically results primarily from the degeneration of ganglion cells in the myenteric plexus of the esophageal wall[1,2].

Achalasia is a rare clinical entity with annual incidence and prevalence of approximately 1.6 and 10 cases per 100000 individuals, respectively. Both sexes are affected equally, there is no racial predilection and the age of diagnosis ranges between 25 and 60 years[3,4]. Onset is rather insidious and disease progression gradual accounting for high rates of delayed diagnosis. The predominant symptom of achalasia is dysphagia to solids and liquids. Other symptoms include regurgitation of undigested food or saliva occasionally leading to aspiration and pneumonia, sub sternal chest pain, weight loss and heartburn[5].

The diagnosis of achalasia when clinically suspected is suggested by barium esophagram and established by manometry. On barium swallow supporting findings include aperistalsis, dilation of the esophagus, bird-beak appearance of the gastro-esophageal junction and delayed contrast medium emptying[6]. Manometry typically reveals incomplete or absent LES relaxation in response to a swallow and aperistalsis in the distal 2/3 of the esophagus[7]. Recently high resolution manometry classifies achalasia in 3 subtypes namely I (classic), II (with panesophageal pressurization) and III (spastic or vigorous)[8]. This classification possibly correlates with the final outcome of treatment[9,10]. Endoscopy may be normal or reveals a dilated esophagus with retained saliva and undigested food particles along with difficulty in passing the gastro-esophageal junction. Of importance, endoscopic examination and, when indicated, imaging studies are mandatory to exclude focal malignancy mimicking primary achalasia[11,12].

CURRENT TREATMENT OPTIONS AND THEIR LIMITATIONS

Treatment modalities for achalasia aim at reducing LES resting pressure thus relieving dysphagia and regurgitation and preventing the long-term development or mega-esophagus. This goal is accomplished by either mechanical disruption of the LES muscular fibers (*e.g.*, pneumatic dilation, myotomy either laparoscopic or peroral endoscopic) or by pharmacological decrease in LES pressure (*e.g.*, botulinum toxin injection, oral nitrates and calcium-channel blockers)[13,14].

Pneumatic dilation (PD) represents a highly-accepted first-line therapy for primary achalasia due to its cost-effectiveness and low complication rates. PD is performed in a gradual fashion by experienced endoscopists using standard-diameter balloons. Initial success rates are high and up to 90% of patients report symptomatic relief. Favorable predictors include older age (> 45 years), female gender, narrow esophageal lumen, post-dilation pressure < 10 mmHg and type II pattern on high-resolution manometry[10,15,16]. However, improvement is often not sustainable in the medium - to long-term period, since prospective studies suggest that approximately two thirds of patients eventually relapse and need additional dilations and possibly surgery[17]. Moreover, subsequent dilations seem less effective and patients referred for myotomy are at increased risk for intra-operative complications. Mostly feared complication is esophageal perforation with an overall median rate of 1.9% (range 0%-16%)[18]. Additionally gastroesophageal reflux disease occurs in 15%-35% of patients necessitating antisecretory medications[19].

Laparoscopic Heller myotomy (LHM) coupled with Dor fundoplication is the primary alternative to PD for achalasia. Initial clinical remission is achieved to nearly 90% of patients but this excellent outcome seems to wane over time[18,20]. Long-term studies show that 18% of patients require PD and 5%-10% of them repeat myotomy or esophagectomy 5-11 years post-operatively[21,22]. Nevertheless, a meta-analysis published in 2013 favored LHM over PD in terms of both short- and long-term efficacy[23]. Being more invasive, surgery is associated with a protracted recovery period and numerous complications including gastro-esophageal reflux disease (GERD), dysphagia associated with the fundoplication that may require dilations, perforation, bleeding, leaks and infections which affect negatively its cost-effectiveness[20]. Despite these imperfections, LHM is preferred over PD for patients younger than 40 years as they frequently need more re-dilations than older subjects[5]. To note, very recently, Nau *et al*[24] suggested that LHM should be used as a benchmark against which other treatments for achalasia are judged, given its outstanding results[24].

Developed by Inoue in Japan peroral endoscopic myotomy (POEM) is the most fascinating new treatment option for achalasia currently being extensively studied in the United States and in Europe. This approach involves endoscopic dissection of the esophageal submucosal space and the creation of a tunnel eventually allowing LES circular muscle bundles dissection[25,26]. Initial studies in a total of 1000 procedures with a mean follow-up from 3 to 12 mo report excellent short term results (clinical success 82%-100%) and only minor self-limited adverse events (mainly tense capnoperitoneum) in less than 10% of patients[27]. The most serious complication is mediastinitis due to esophageal leak, although its incidence seems remarkably low. On the other hand, recent studies show that objectively-measured gastroesophageal reflux disease prevalence after POEM varies from 20% to 46%, higher than that in early reports and similar to those following LHM with Dor fundoplication[28,29]. No procedure-related death has been reported. In all circumstances, further studies with long-term follow-up, as well as randomized trials comparing POEM with LHM and PD are warranted before POEM

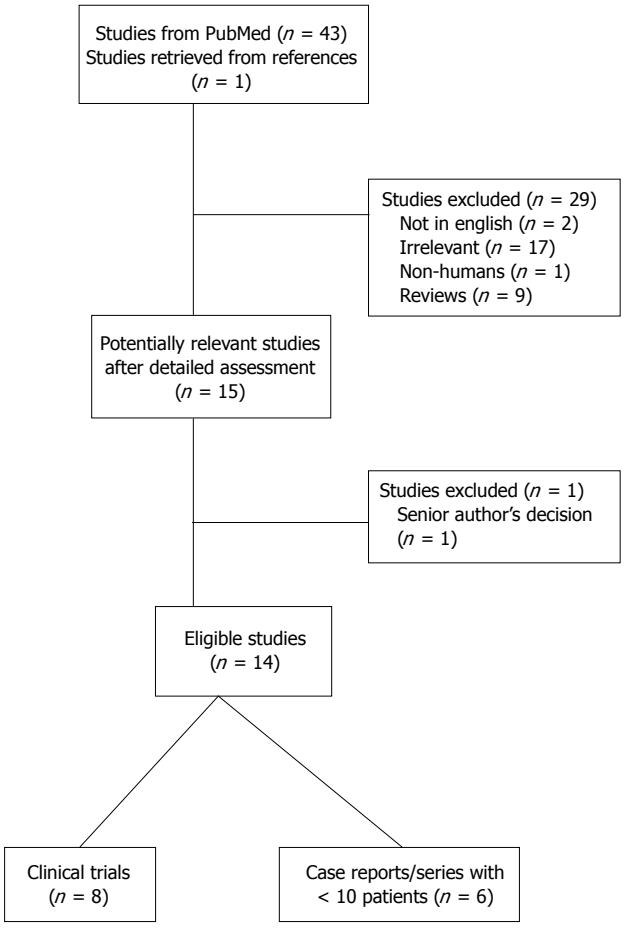


Figure 1 Flow diagram of the literature search strategy and valuation of studies identified for review.

can be recommended[25] as the procedure of choice.

Intrasphincteric botulinum toxin injection (BTI) can be easily performed during routine endoscopy in poor surgical candidates. Using a sclerotherapy needle, 100 units of the toxin are administered just above the squamocolumnar junction in at least 4 quadrants. Its initial efficacy reaches those of PD and LHM. Unfortunately, symptoms relapse in more than 50% of patients necessitating additional injections at 6-24-mo intervals[30]. Main complications are post-procedural chest pain, heartburn and allergic reactions[19]. In addition, BTI may increase the technical difficulty of subsequent myotomy either surgical or endoscopic[31].

Oral pharmacologic agents indicated for primary achalasia include calcium-channel blockers and nitrates. They represent the least effective means of treatment[32]. Traditionally, they are administered 30 to 60 min prior to meals and act by decreasing basal LES pressure and tone. Their efficacy is variable and their use is limited to those who are not suitable to receive invasive therapies. Moreover, side effects such as headache, hypotension and peripheral edema, as well as tachyphylaxis, diminish their application[19].

Finally, for patients with end-stage achalasia (megaesophagus, or sigmoid-esophagus) who have failed PD and/or LHM, esophagectomy should be considered[33]. Esophageal resection results in symptomatic improvement in more than 80% of patients; however, it is associated with significant mortality reaching 5.4% in uncontrolled studies and recurrence of dysphagia in up to 50% of patients[34].

As shown, all currently available therapeutic modalities for primary achalasia remain of palliative nature, given that the underlying mechanism cannot be reversed. Moreover, a good proportion of patients will experience symptom recurrence and require retreatment. In this context, several new endoscopic treatments are under evaluation over the last years. This review aims to highlight the role of self-expandable metal stents (SEMS) in the management of patients with achalasia.

USED MATERIALS AND METHODS

Using PubMed we carried out a thorough review of the literature to identify all articles published between January 1995 and July 2014 referring to the use of SEMS in achalasia. The search was initially performed using the term "achalasia and stents" as a free text. A total of 43 studies were retrieved and one additional was identified by a manual search of the references cited in the key articles. Each manuscript was subsequently cross-checked by two authors (AS, CM) to achieve a maximum completeness of the reports chosen for inclusion. In case of disagreement, a third senior author (KT) made the final decision. Eventually, 14 studies were considered suitable for review. The article selection process is presented in Figure 1.

SEMS FOR ACHALASIA TREATMENT

Early reports regarding the use of SEMS in the treatment of achalasia were published in 1998 by De Palma *et al*[35] A nitinol coil stent (InStent Inc., Eden, Praire, United States), 10 cm long, was placed in 4 patients with long-standing disease who were unresponsive to conventional treatment such as LHM, PD and BTI. Stent placement was successful in all cases and the patients achieved clinical remission during the follow-up period up to 12 mo. One of them developed reflux esophagitis treated medically[35].

Three years later the same authors presented their extended experience in 8 patients followed for a period ranging from 29 to 44 mo. Nitinol coil and Ultraflex (Microvasive, Boston Scientific, Natick, MA, United States) stents were placed across the gastro-esophageal junction. Although stent implantation was technically successful and all patients experienced complete remission of dysphagia, a significant complication rate was noted both in the early (within 30 d) and in the late (after 30 d) phase. In particular, 62.5% of patients had early complications (mainly stent migration, 37.5%) and 57.1% late complications (mainly chest pain, 28.5%). As a result the investigators concluded that the use of SEMS in achalasia should not be generalized but reserved only for carefully selected cases[36].

Unlike the rather promising experience of De Palma *et al*[35], a case series published in 2000 announced extremely disappointing results. Three different SEMS types, namely Gianturco Rosch Z stent (Wilson Cook Medical, Winston Salem, NC, United States) and Wallstent I and Ⅱ (Schneider USA, Plymouth, MN, United States) were inserted in 4 achalasic patients. Placement was technically feasible and uneventful. Symptomatic remission before further intervention varied between 2 wk and 10 mo. However, complications such as stent migration and dysphagia recurrence secondary to either food bolus impaction or inflammatory stricture occurred in all cases. Most serious, one patient died from bleeding due to an aorta-enteric fistula developed from a penetrating gastro-esophageal junction ulcer adjacent to the stent. The authors recommended that alternative to SEMS options should be preferred in the management of patient with refractory achalasia[37].

Thereafter, a center from the United States and one from Spain reported few cases of achalasic patients treated with SEMS insertion. The former used metal coil stents (Esophacoil, InStent Inc., MN, United States) in 2 patients with complicated refractory achalasia. Technical and clinical success was achieved; nevertheless, hematemesis secondary to severe erosive esophagitis and small bowel obstruction due to stent migration were encountered a few months after stent placement[38]. The Spanish center announced the use of SEMS (Hanarostent, MI Tech, IZASA, Seoul, South Korea) as an effective short-term bridging therapy in 2 achalasic patients, one pregnant and one with newly diagnosed pituitary tumor[39].

In 2009 Zhao *et al*[40] reported the results of a prospective study assessing the long term efficacy and safety of a specifically designed partially-covered SEMS, 30 mm in diameter, placed for 3-7 d in 75 achalasic patients. Both technical and post-procedural clinical success was 100%. During the long follow-up period (up to 13 years) the overall remission rates remained extremely high reaching 100% and 83.3% at > 5 and > 10 years, respectively. These excellent results, as well as the low rates of complications including stent migration and perforation (5.3% and 0%, respectively) were attributed to the large-diameter stent that had been used. On the other hand, the same factor was possibly responsible for the relative high rates of chest pain (38.7%), gastro-esophageal reflux (20%) and bleeding (12%). It was therefore suggested that temporary SEMS placement is effective and safe and could serve as an alternative or complementary method in the management of esophageal achalasia[40].

The importance of stent diameter in terms of clinical efficacy was evaluated in a prospective study with long-term follow-up conducted by Cheng *et al*[41] As the results indicate, the overall cumulative clinical remission rate was significantly higher for patients who underwent a 30 mm stent placement as compared with those who received a 25 mm and 20 mm one (87% *vs* 73% *vs* 47%, respectively). Similarly, the wider the stent, the lower the migration rate (6.6% *vs* 13.3% *vs* 26.7%) and the higher the chest pain rate (40% *vs* 33% *vs* 17%, respectively)[41].

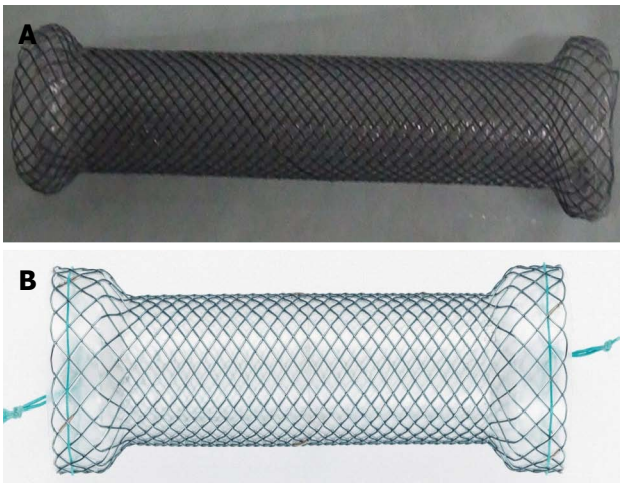


Figure 2 Large-diameter self-expandable metallic stent for achalasia. A: Self-expandable metal stents similar to that used by Coppola *et al*[43]. Picture is provided by courtesy of Mr. Kuhn D, Micro-Tech Europe GmbH, Dusseldorf, Germany; B: Niti-S stent. Picture is provided by courtesy of Mr. Bekzat M, TaeWoong Medical, Seoul, South Korea.

A recent study by Zeng *et al*[42] assessed for the first time the efficacy of fully-covered SEMS, 20-25 mm in diameter, in achalasia (Z-stent, Sigma, Huaian, China). Fifty-nine patients with no prior treatment were enrolled and underwent stent placement for a 1 mo period. The cumulative remission rates after 6, 12, 18, 24, 30 and 36 mo were 90.9%, 81.8%, 76.4%, 69.1%, 65.%% and 49.1%, respectively. Sub sternal chest pain was the most common complication (25.5%), followed by heartburn (10.6%) and stent migration (8.5%)[42].

Apart from Eastern countries, a study from Italy published a few months ago evaluated the safety and efficacy of SEMS as a temporary treatment in patients with achalasia. Seven patients underwent a 30 mm partially-covered stent (Micro-Tech, Nanjin, China) placement for 6 d and were followed thereafter for a mean period of 19 mo. Beneficial effects on dysphagia were excellent in 5 and good in 2 patients during the follow-up. No serious complication was observed. The authors concluded that large stent placement may permanently disrupt the muscular fibers of the cardia and possibly represents a safe and effective option for patients not fit for more invasive interventions[43]. A stent similar to the one used in this study as well as, a nitinol-covered stent are illustrated in Figure 2. Major points of the above mentioned studies are presented in Table 1.

SEMS *VS* PD AND BTI IN THE TREATMENT OF ACHALASIA

Several studies compare SEMS *vs* established treatment options such as PD and BTI in the management of patients with achalasia, as presented in Table 2. Of note,

Table 1 Published series using self-expandable metallic stents for achalasia treatment

Ref.	Coppola *et al*[43] (2014)	Zeng *et al*[42] (2014)	Cheng *et al*[41] (2010)	Zhao *et al*[40] (2009)	De Palma *et al*[36] (2001)	Mukherjee *et al*[37] (2000)	De Palma *et al*[35] (1998)
Baseline characteristics and effectiveness							
Patients, *n*	7	59	90	75	8	4	4
SEMS diameter, mm	30	20/25	20/25/30	30	18	18/20	18
Time to removal, d	6	30	4-5	3-7	?	?	?
Technical success, %	100	100	100	100	100	100	100
Initial remission, %	100	100	100	100	100	100	100
Major complications							
Stent migration, *n*	0	4	14	4	4	1	0
Perforation, *n*	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
Bleeding, *n*	0	0	14	9	0	1	0
30-d mortality, *n*	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

Table 2 Published comparison studies

Ref.	Li *et al*[47] (2010)	Li *et al*[46] (2010)	Zhu *et al*[45] (2010)	Cheng *et al*[44] (2003)	Cai *et al*[48] (2013)
Compared methods	PD *vs* SEMS (20, 25, 30 mm)	PD *vs* SEMS (30 mm)	PD *vs* SEMS (30 mm)	PD *vs* SEMS (permanent, temporary)	BTI *vs* SEMS (25 mm)
Patients, *n*	30/30/30/30	80/75	38/63	60/8/65	51/59
Technical success, %	100/100/100/100	100/100	100	100/100/100	100/100
Initial remission, %	100/100/100/100	100/100	100	100/100/100	94.1/100
Remission at maximum follow-up, %	0/0/28.6/83.3	0/83.3	42.1/88.9	10/33.3/85.5	4.17/49.1
Major complications					
Migration, *n*	NA/8/4/2	NA/4	NA/2	NA/0/0	NA/4
Perforation, *n*	0/0/0/0	0/0	0/0	0/0/0	0/0
Bleeding, *n*	2/3/5/6	4/9	3/10	6/3/8	0/0
30-d mortality, *n*	0/0/0/0	0/0	0/0	0/0/0	0/0

PD: Pneumatic dilation; SEMS: Self-expandable metallic stent; NA: Not applicable.

no randomized trials are currently available.

In 2003 Cheng *et al*[44] compared PD with permanent uncovered or ant reflux covered SEMS and temporary partially-covered SEMS. The latter stents, sized 20-30 mm in diameter, were inserted and withdrawn successfully after 3-7 d. According to the results, temporary partially-covered SEMS exhibited significantly superior long-term therapeutic efficacy as compared to the rest interventions, although immediate symptomatic relief was equally excellent. Interestingly, permanently uncovered metal stent dilation proved to be unsuitable for patients with achalasia due to high rates of gastro-esophageal reflux and stent occlusion secondary to hyperplasia of granulation tissue[44].

To overcome the limitations of their previous study (*e.g.*, relatively short follow-up and great variety in stent diameters) the same investigators reported the results of a retrospective trial comparing PD and temporary partially-covered SEMS (Zhiye Medical Instruments, Guangzhou, China and Youyan Yijin Advanced Materials, Beijing, China). The diameter of the balloon or stent used was 30 mm. The stent was removed within 7 d after placement and the patients were followed both clinically and manometrically for more than 10 years. The results showed that both interventions are very efficacious in the immediate post-procedural period. However, the total symptom scores in patients treated with SEMS were statistically better than those treated with PD throughout the follow-up period ($P < 0.05$). LES pressure did not exhibit significant differences apart from one time frame (after 8-10 years). As expected, complications such as pain and bleeding occurred more frequently in the stent group compared to the balloon one (42.9% *vs* 23.6% and 15.9% *vs* 8%, respectively)[45].

Similar results were obtained by an uncontrolled prospective study with a long-term follow-up comparing SEMS and PD of the same diameter (30 mm). Temporary (3-7 d) SEMS placement was associated with significantly higher clinical remission rates in all follow-up periods (up to > 10 years). Notably, the long-term efficacy of SEMS seems to be comparable with that of LHM. Although of no statistical significance, complications like chest pain and bleeding were more common in the SEMS group, whereas stent migration occurred in 5.3% of patients[46]. Additionally, the same medical group showed prospectively that temporary SEMS with a diameter of 30 mm achieved significantly higher clinical remission rates after more than 10 years of follow-up as compared to patients treated with PD with a 30 mm balloon or SEMS with diameters of 20 or 25 mm (83.3% *vs* 0%, 0% and 28.6%, respectively). Surprisingly, the clinical remission rate with PD in the long-term was extremely poor suggesting a possible study limitation[47].

The only study that compares BTI and SEMS for

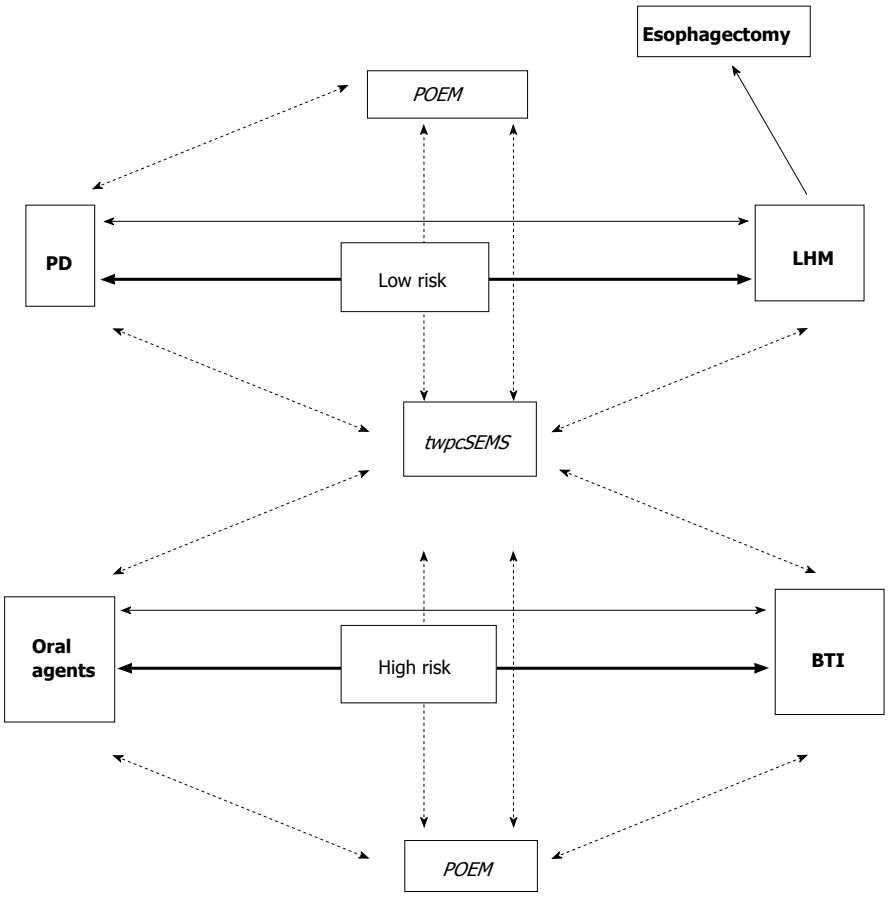


Figure 3 Proposed therapeutic algorithm for achalasia based on surgical risk. Currently established treatments are in bold. Investigational ones are in italics. Arrows indicate current first-line treatments. Lines binding different treatments indicate management of failures. Dotted lines indicate assumed steps in management, while solid lines the to-date recommended[11]. PD: Pneumatic dilation; LHM: Laparoscopic Heller myotomy; BTI: Botulinum toxin injection; twpcSEMS: Temporal, wide, partially covered, self-expandable metallic stent; POEM: Peroral endoscopic myotomy.

the treatment of achalasia has been published by Cai and colleagues in 2013. A partially-covered SEMS 25 mm in width was applied and retrieved after 4 wk. The mean duration of follow-up was 28 mo (range 10-36 mo). Based on the results, the patients in the SEMS group achieved significantly better improvements regarding global symptoms scores, dysphagia and LES pressure. Moreover, differences in remission rates after 12 mo gained statistical significance favoring SEMS placement. No adverse events were observed in the BTI group, whereas 13 episodes of chest pain, 9 cases of regurgitation and 4 stent migrations were captured in the SEMS group[48].

SEMS IN THE NEW ERA

Achalasia treatment should be individualized taking into account both patients characteristics and available expertise. Although current established treatments are effective, emerging techniques such as SEMS placement are being developed, as presented. Nevertheless, what could be the exact position of SEMS in the therapeutic plan of achalasia, especially in the era of very promising interventions like POEM?

As shown in Figure 3, temporal placement of wide, partially covered SEMS could potentially serve as an alternative first-line treatment in both low and high surgical risk patients. This could be of great value mainly for the latter ones, given that the unique currently recommended treatment option (*e.g.*, BTI) exhibits short-term, only, efficacy. Temporal wide partially covered SEMS may also be preferred for all cases of treatment failures, irrespective of the initial therapy, offering an efficacious, well-tolerated choice. It may be hypothesized, that SEMS could possibly serve on a short-term basis as a bridging therapy until surgery is performed.

One could argue that POEM will eventually predominate in achalasia treatment due to its efficacy and safety profile according to initial studies. However, POEM is still a quite invasive procedure compared to SEMS placement. Additionally, it is by far more technically demanding, requires specific training and can be feasible only in centers of excellence worldwide[49,50]. General anesthesia requirements, time consumption and cost should be undoubtedly considered. Long-term results and adverse events in patients who have undergone POEM are still pending. Given the above, temporal placement of wide, partially covered SEMS seems able to maintain a role in the management of achalasic patients, even in the advent of POEM. Comparative randomized trials are

surely appreciated before achalasia therapeutic algorithm takes its definite form.

CONCLUSION

Treatment remains palliative since its neuronal defect seems to be irreversible. In this setting, temporal, wide, partially covered SEMS placement may represent a safe and effective alternative therapy for carefully selected patients. Several technical issues including stent type, stent diameter and length, optimal time for removal and prevention of complications are still open for discussion. Small size of treated population, low quality of studies' design and the majority of studies performed in Asia also preclude the generalizability of the reviewed evidence.

Additionally, the advent of self-expandable biodegradable stents used in the management of refractory benign esophageal strictures, as well as drug-eluting stents could provide an area for further innovation, in the field of stents in achalasia. Large, multicenter, randomized trials are warranted - while not always feasible - to elucidate the exact position of stent placement in the therapeutic armamentarium for the different profiles of achalasic patients.

REFERENCES

1 **Vaezi MF**, Richter JE. Diagnosis and management of achalasia. American College of Gastroenterology Practice Parameter Committee. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1999; **94**: 3406-3412 [PMID: 10606295 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.1999.01639.x]
2 **Francis DL**, Katzka DA. Achalasia: update on the disease and its treatment. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **139**: 369-374 [PMID: 20600038 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.06.024]
3 **Sadowski DC**, Ackah F, Jiang B, Svenson LW. Achalasia: incidence, prevalence and survival. A population-based study. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2010; **22**: e256-e261 [PMID: 20465592 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2010.01511.x]
4 **O'Neill OM**, Johnston BT, Coleman HG. Achalasia: a review of clinical diagnosis, epidemiology, treatment and outcomes. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 5806-5812 [PMID: 24124325 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i35.5806]
5 **Boeckxstaens GE**, Zaninotto G, Richter JE. Achalasia. *Lancet* 2014; **383**: 83-93 [PMID: 23871090 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(13)60651-0]
6 **Pandolfino JE**, Kahrilas PJ. Presentation, diagnosis, and management of achalasia. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **11**: 887-897 [PMID: 23395699 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2013.01.032]
7 **Pandolfino JE**, Kahrilas PJ. AGA technical review on the clinical use of esophageal manometry. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 209-224 [PMID: 15633138]
8 **Pandolfino JE**, Kwiatek MA, Nealis T, Bulsiewicz W, Post J, Kahrilas PJ. Achalasia: a new clinically relevant classification by high-resolution manometry. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **135**: 1526-1533 [PMID: 18722376 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.07.022]
9 **Kahrilas PJ**, Boeckxstaens G. The spectrum of achalasia: lessons from studies of pathophysiology and high-resolution manometry. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **145**: 954-965 [PMID: 23973923 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.08.038]
10 **Pratap N**, Kalapala R, Darisetty S, Joshi N, Ramchandani M, Banerjee R, Lakhtakia S, Gupta R, Tandan M, Rao GV, Reddy DN. Achalasia cardia subtyping by high-resolution manometry predicts the therapeutic outcome of pneumatic balloon dilatation. *J Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2011; **17**: 48-53 [PMID: 21369491 DOI: 10.5056/jnm.2011.17.1.48]
11 **Vaezi MF**, Pandolfino JE, Vela MF. ACG clinical guideline: diagnosis and management of achalasia. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2013; **108**: 1238-1249; quiz 1250 [PMID: 23877351 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2013.196]
12 **Richter JE**. The diagnosis and misdiagnosis of Achalasia: it does not have to be so difficult. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **9**: 1010-1011 [PMID: 21699819 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2011.06.012]
13 **Müller M**, Eckardt AJ, Wehrmann T. Endoscopic approach to achalasia. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **5**: 379-390 [PMID: 23951393 DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v5.i8.379]
14 **Eckardt AJ**, Eckardt VF. Treatment and surveillance strategies in achalasia: an update. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **8**: 311-319 [PMID: 21522116 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2011.68]
15 **Farhoomand K**, Connor JT, Richter JE, Achkar E, Vaezi MF. Predictors of outcome of pneumatic dilation in achalasia. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2004; **2**: 389-394 [PMID: 15118976]
16 **Eckardt VF**, Aignherr C, Bernhard G. Predictors of outcome in patients with achalasia treated by pneumatic dilation. *Gastroenterology* 1992; **103**: 1732-1738 [PMID: 1451966]
17 **Hulselmans M**, Vanuytsel T, Degreef T, Sifrim D, Coosemans W, Lerut T, Tack J. Long-term outcome of pneumatic dilation in the treatment of achalasia. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **8**: 30-35 [PMID: 19782766 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2009.09.020]
18 **Vela MF**, Richter JE, Khandwala F, Blackstone EH, Wachsberger D, Baker ME, Rice TW. The long-term efficacy of pneumatic dilatation and Heller myotomy for the treatment of achalasia. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **4**: 580-587 [PMID: 16630776]
19 **Cheatham JG**, Wong RK. Current approach to the treatment of achalasia. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2011; **13**: 219-225 [PMID: 21424734 DOI: 10.1007/s11894-011-0190-z]
20 **Campos GM**, Vittinghoff E, Rabl C, Takata M, Gadenstätter M, Lin F, Ciovica R. Endoscopic and surgical treatments for achalasia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Surg* 2009; **249**: 45-57 [PMID: 19106675 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31818e43ab]
21 **Richter JE**, Boeckxstaens GE. Management of achalasia: surgery or pneumatic dilation. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 869-876 [PMID: 21303915 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2010.212423]
22 **Wang L**, Li YM. Recurrent achalasia treated with Heller myotomy: a review of the literature. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 7122-7126 [PMID: 19084921]
23 **Schoenberg MB**, Marx S, Kersten JF, Rösch T, Belle S, Kähler G, Vassiliou MC, Lüth S, von Renteln D. Laparoscopic Heller myotomy versus endoscopic balloon dilatation for the treatment of achalasia: a network meta-analysis. *Ann Surg* 2013; **258**: 943-952 [PMID: 24220600 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0000000000000212]
24 **Nau P**, Rattner D. Laparoscopic Heller myotomy as the gold standard for treatment of achalasia. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2014; **18**: 2201-2207 [PMID: 25205539 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-014-2655-5]
25 **Inoue H**, Tianle KM, Ikeda H, Hosoya T, Onimaru M, Yoshida A, Minami H, Kudo SE. Peroral endoscopic myotomy for esophageal achalasia: technique, indication, and outcomes. *Thorac Surg Clin* 2011; **21**: 519-525 [PMID: 22040634 DOI: 10.1016/j.thorsurg.2011.08.005]
26 **Friedel D**, Modayil R, Iqbal S, Grendell JH, Stavropoulos SN. Per-oral endoscopic myotomy for achalasia: An American perspective. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **5**: 420-427 [PMID: 24044040 DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v5.i9.420]
27 **Stavropoulos SN**, Desilets DJ, Fuchs KH, Gostout CJ, Haber G, Inoue H, Kochman ML, Modayil R, Savides T, Scott DJ, Swanstrom LL, Vassiliou MC. Per-oral endoscopic myotomy white paper summary. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **80**: 1-15 [PMID: 24950639 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2014.04.014]
28 **Verlaan T**, Rohof WO, Bredenoord AJ, Eberl S, Rösch T, Fockens P. Effect of peroral endoscopic myotomy on

esophagogastric junction physiology in patients with achalasia. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **78**: 39-44 [PMID: 23453184 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.01.006]

29 **Von Renteln D**, Fuchs KH, Fockens P, Bauerfeind P, Vassiliou MC, Werner YB, Fried G, Breithaupt W, Heinrich H, Bredenoord AJ, Kersten JF, Verlaan T, Trevisonno M, Rösch T. Peroral endoscopic myotomy for the treatment of achalasia: an international prospective multicenter study. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **145**: 309-311.e1-3 [PMID: 23665071 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.04.057]

30 **Annese V**, Bassotti G, Coccia G, Dinelli M, D'Onofrio V, Gatto G, Leandro G, Repici A, Testoni PA, Andriulli A. A multicentre randomised study of intrasphincteric botulinum toxin in patients with oesophageal achalasia. GISMAD Achalasia Study Group. *Gut* 2000; **46**: 597-600 [PMID: 10764700]

31 **Smith CD**, Stival A, Howell DL, Swafford V. Endoscopic therapy for achalasia before Heller myotomy results in worse outcomes than heller myotomy alone. *Ann Surg* 2006; **243**: 579-584; discussion 584-586 [PMID: 16632991 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000217524.75529.2d]

32 **Vaezi MF**, Richter JE. Current therapies for achalasia: comparison and efficacy. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 1998; **27**: 21-35 [PMID: 9706766]

33 **Glatz SM**, Richardson JD. Esophagectomy for end stage achalasia. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2007; **11**: 1134-1137 [PMID: 17623258 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-007-0226-8]

34 **Molena D**, Yang SC. Surgical management of end-stage achalasia. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2012; **24**: 19-26 [PMID: 22643658 DOI: 10.1053/j.semtcvs.2012.01.015]

35 **De Palma GD**, Catanzano C. Removable self-expanding metal stents: a pilot study for treatment of achalasia of the esophagus. *Endoscopy* 1998; **30**: S95-S96 [PMID: 9865580]

36 **De Palma GD**, lovino P, Masone S, Persico M, Persico G. Self-expanding metal stents for endoscopic treatment of esophageal achalasia unresponsive to conventional treatments. Long-term results in eight patients. *Endoscopy* 2001; **33**: 1027-1030 [PMID: 11740645 DOI: 10.1055/s-2001-18933]

37 **Mukherjee S**, Kaplan DS, Parasher G, Sipple MS. Expandable metal stents in achalasia--is there a role? *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 2185-2188 [PMID: 11007215 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2000.02301.x]

38 **Lee JG**, Hsu R, Leung JW. Are self-expanding metal mesh stents useful in the treatment of benign esophageal stenoses and fistulas? An experience of four cases. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 1920-1925 [PMID: 10950036 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2000.02246.x]

39 **Díaz Roca AB**, Sampascual SB, Calderón AJ, Menéndez F, Varela JI, Baranda A, Ruíz P, de Zarate JO, Bravo M, Hijona L, Orive V. Self-expanding esophageal prostheses as an alternative temporary treatment for achalasia. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2009; **69**: 980 [PMID: 19327492 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.07.019]

40 **Zhao JG**, Li YD, Cheng YS, Li MH, Chen NW, Chen WX, Shang KZ. Long-term safety and outcome of a temporary self-expanding metallic stent for achalasia: a prospective study with a 13-year single-center experience. *Eur Radiol* 2009; **19**: 1973-1980 [PMID: 19296113 DOI: 10.1007/s00330-009-1373-y]

41 **Cheng YS**, Ma F, Li YD, Chen NW, Chen WX, Zhao JG, Wu CG. Temporary self-expanding metallic stents for achalasia: a prospective study with a long-term follow-up. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 5111-5117 [PMID: 20976849]

42 **Zeng Y**, Dai YM, Wan XJ. Clinical remission following endoscopic placement of retrievable, fully covered metal stents in patients with esophageal achalasia. *Dis Esophagus* 2014; **27**: 103-108 [PMID: 23796127 DOI: 10.1111/dote.12083]

43 **Coppola F**, Gaia S, Rolle E, Recchia S. Temporary endoscopic metallic stent for idiopathic esophageal achalasia. *Surg Innov* 2014; **21**: 11-14 [PMID: 23793575 DOI: 10.1177/1553350613492024]

44 **Cheng YS**, Li MH, Chen WX, Chen NW, Zhuang QX, Shang KZ. Selection and evaluation of three interventional procedures for achalasia based on long-term follow-up. *World J Gastroenterol* 2003; **9**: 2370-2373 [PMID: 14562416]

45 **Zhu YQ**, Cheng YS, Tang GY, Li MH, Zhao JG, Li F. Comparison of temporary stent insertion with pneumatic dilation of the same diameter in the treatment of achalasia patients: a retrospective study. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **25**: 499-505 [PMID: 20074159 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2009.06107.x]

46 **Li YD**, Cheng YS, Li MH, Chen NW, Chen WX, Zhao JG. Temporary self-expanding metallic stents and pneumatic dilation for the treatment of achalasia: a prospective study with a long-term follow-up. *Dis Esophagus* 2010; **23**: 361-367 [PMID: 20353447 DOI: 10.1111/j.1442-2050.2010.01048.x]

47 **Li YD**, Tang GY, Cheng YS, Chen NW, Chen WX, Zhao JG. 13-year follow-up of a prospective comparison of the long-term clinical efficacy of temporary self-expanding metallic stents and pneumatic dilatation for the treatment of achalasia in 120 patients. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2010; **195**: 1429-1437 [PMID: 21098206 DOI: 10.2214/AJR.10.4407]

48 **Cai XB**, Dai YM, Wan XJ, Zeng Y, Liu F, Wang D, Zhou H. Comparison between botulinum injection and removable covered self-expanding metal stents for the treatment of achalasia. *Dig Dis Sci* 2013; **58**: 1960-1966 [PMID: 23397470 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-013-2564-6]

49 **Kurian AA**, Dunst CM, Sharata A, Bhayani NH, Reavis KM, Swanström LL. Peroral endoscopic esophageal myotomy: defining the learning curve. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **77**: 719-725 [PMID: 23394838 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.12.006]

50 **Teitelbaum EN**, Soper NJ, Arafat FO, Santos BF, Kahrilas PJ, Pandolfino JE, Hungness ES. Analysis of a learning curve and predictors of intraoperative difficulty for peroral esophageal myotomy (POEM). *J Gastrointest Surg* 2014; **18**: 92-98; discussion 98-99 [PMID: 24002767 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-013-2332-0]

P- Reviewer: Herbella FAM, Syam AF **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Zhang DN

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.53

World J Gastrointest Endosc 2015 January 16; 7(1): 53-58
ISSN 1948-5190 (online)

Intragastric surgery using laparoscopy and oral endoscopy for gastric submucosal tumors

Nobumi Tagaya, Teppei Tatsuoka, Yawara Kubota, Masayuki Takegami, Nana Sugamata, Kazuyuki Saito, Takashi Okuyama, Yoshitake Sugamata, Masatoshi Oya

Nobumi Tagaya, Teppei Tatsuoka, Yawara Kubota, Masayuki Takegami, Nana Sugamata, Kazuyuki Saito, Takashi Okuyama, Yoshitake Sugamata, Masatoshi Oya, Department of Surgery, Dokkyo Medical University Koshigaya Hospital, Saitama 343-8555, Japan

Author contributions: All authors contributed to this manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest: The authors have no conflicts of interest or financial ties to disclose.

Correspondence to: Nobumi Tagaya, MD, Department of Surgery, Dokkyo Medical University Koshigaya Hospital, 2-1-50 Minamikoshigaya, Koshigaya, Saitama 343-8555, Japan. tagaya@dokkyomed.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-48-9651130
Fax: +81-48-9651130

Received: August 31, 2014
Peer-review started: September 1, 2014
First decision: November 3, 2014
Revised: December 1, 2014
Accepted: December 16, 2014
Article in press: December 17, 2014
Published online: January 16, 2015

Abstract

We review the techniques and outcomes of the intragastric resection for gastric submucosal tumors (GSTs) using laparoscope and oral endoscope. In the literature, the mean operation time, intraoperative blood loss, pathological size of the tumor and postoperative hospital stay were 134 min, minimal, 31 mm and 6.4 d, respectively. There were no particular perioperative complications during the follow-up period (mean: 121.3 mo). Intragastric surgery using laparoscopy and oral endoscopy can be considerably beneficial for patients with GSTs locating in the upper third of the stomach between 2-5 cm in diameter and < 8 cm^2 in cross-sectional area and located in the upper third of the stomach.

Key words: Laparoscopic surgery; Intragastric resection; Gastric submucosal tumor; Oral endoscopy

Core tip: The laparoscopic approach for gastric submucosal tumors (GSTs) depends on the characteristics of the submucosal tumors including its location or size. In particular, GSTs located close to the esophagogastric junction or pyloric ring cannot be easily applied the laparoscopic local resection. Therefore, the intragastric approach is adopted for those tumors. This review evaluates the technique and outcomes of the intragastric resection for GSTs using laparoscopy and oral endoscopy. Intragastric surgery using laparoscopy and oral endoscopy can be considerably beneficial for patients with GSTs less than 5 cm in diameter and locating in the upper third of the stomach.

Tagaya N, Tatsuoka T, Kubota Y, Takegami M, Sugamata N, Saito K, Okuyama T, Sugamata Y, Oya M. Intragastric surgery using laparoscopy and oral endoscopy for gastric submucosal tumors. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; 7(1): 53-58 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5190/full/v7/i1/53.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.53

INTRODUCTION

Techniques for the resection of gastric submucosal tumors (GSTs) have seen a shift from an open to an endoscopic approach, and from gastrectomy to local resection[1]. Endoscopic approaches can be divided into oral endoscopic resection and laparoscopic resection. The latter may include the resection from outside, inside or both side, depending on the characteristics of the GST, including its location or size. In particular, GSTs located close to the esophagogastric junction (EGJ) or pyloric ring are not amenable to laparoscopic local resection, and instead an intragastric approach is adopted[2-5]. This review evaluates the techniques and outcomes of intragastric resection for GSTs using laparoscopy and oral endoscopy in a series of patients treated at our institution.

PREOPERATIVE EVALUATIONS

We preoperatively investigated the tumor conditions including the size, location and distance from the EGJ to proximal side of the tumor using an upper gastrointestinal radiological series and endoscopy. Furthermore, endoscopic ultrasound (EUS) was also added to evaluate the location and growing formation of the tumor within the gastric wall[6]. And, EUS-guided fine-needle aspiration biopsy examination was performed when necessary. Computed tomography with contrast medium was added to clarify whether there was any liver metastasis, dissemination, ascites, lymphadenopathy or other comorbidities, as well as the relationship between the tumor and the whole stomach.

INDICATION

The criteria for the use of laparoscopy and oral endoscopy for intragastric resection of GSTs were a tumor between 2-5 cm in diameter and < 8 cm^2 in cross-sectional area with the aim of possible removal *via* the mouth, or an endoscopically evident tendency of the tumor to grow in size during follow-up, and location of the tumor on the posterior wall of the upper third stomach or close to the EGJ[4].

SURGICAL TECHNIQUES

Standard technique[4,5]

The patient was placed in the supine position under general anesthesia. Initially a 12-mm port was initially introduced into the peritoneal cavity at the umbilicus, using the open laparotomy method. After creating a pneumoperitoneum by Carbon dioxide (CO_2) insufflation, and the operative field was kept at 8-10 mmHg of intra-abdominal pressure. The stomach was inflated to confirm the tumor condition using an oral endoscope. When we approached an intragastric technique, the anterior wall of the stomach was lifted up to the abdominal wall using a double-straight needle device (Ideal Lifting: Olympus Medical Systems Co., Tokyo, Japan) to insert the port easily. After this preparation, 5-mm and 12-mm ports were directly inserted into the stomach at the left upper quadrant of the abdominal wall, depending on the tumor location, under the observation of oral endoscope. To obtain the better intragastric operative field, CO_2 insufflation was added into the stomach. A linear stapler to minimize the deformity of the stomach and avoid the stenosis of EGJ carried out local resection of the stomach including the lesion with an adequate margin in all directions. The first fire of linear stapler was put on the normal gastric wall near the distal side of the tumor. The direction of the resection line was modified so as not to close the EGJ. The resected specimen with a plastic bag was removed from the mouth by an oral endoscope. If the tumor removal is complicated orally, we made a small gastrostomy enlarging 12-mm port site, and then the specimen extracted from the stomach. We immediately ensured the free margins around the lesion. The entry holes in the stomach were closed using a linear stapler or hand sewing intracorporeally. Finally, the stomach was re-inflated to check the air leakage or bleeding from the closed sites and confirm no stenosis at the EGJ. Abdominal port sites were closed without drainage tube.

In a modified technique, an initial 12-mm port was introduced at the umbilicus. After checking the intra-abdominal cavity by laparoscope during stomach inflation, the anterior wall of the stomach was pulled out through an umbilical incision, and a 12-mm gastric opening was made. This hole was used for insertion of an Endo-GIA linear stapler or a 10-mm laparoscope. Subsequently a 3-mm port was inserted into the stomach at the left upper quadrant to allow manipulation of the normal gastric mucosa near the tumor (Figure 1). The tumor was resected using a linear stapler under endoscopic guidance (Figure 2). The specimen was retrieved *via* the mouth. The entry hole in the stomach was directly closed extracorporeally, and the 3-mm hole of the stomach was closed inside the stomach by clipping using an oral endoscope (Figure 3). The skin was only closed at the umbilicus.

Single-site technique[7,8]

Initially a 2.5 cm vertical skin incision was made at the umbilicus, and a X small Alexis Wound Protector (Applied Medical, Rancho Santa Margarita, CA, United States) was attached to the incision. The stomach was pulled out through that incision, and a 2-cm opening was made in the anterior wall of the stomach by laparoscopic coagulating shears. A single port device or surgical glove with 3 or 4 working ports was introduced into the gastric orifice. After the stomach was inflated with CO_2 gas, intragastric pressure was maintained between 8 and 10 mmHg. A 10- or 5-mm laparoscope was inserted, and the target tumor was identified. The normal mucosa adjacent to the tumor was initially pulled up with a curved grasper

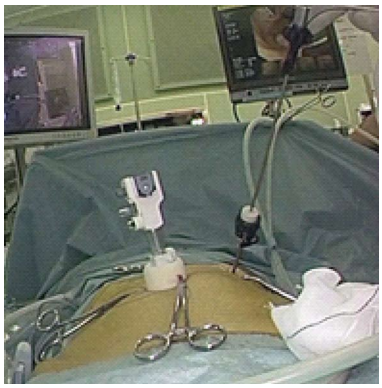


Figure 1 Intraoperative outside view of one 12-mm port and 3-mm port.

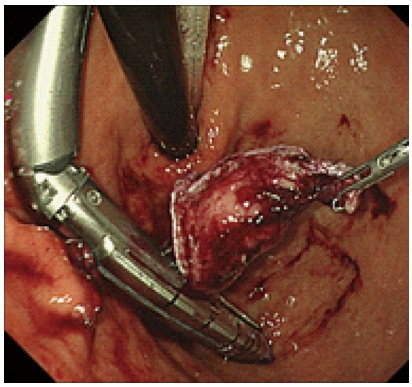


Figure 2 The tumor was resected by an Endo-GIA stapler under the guidance of oral endoscope.

and resected using a 30-mm linear stapler not to expose the tumor itself. Subsequently, the remaining main tumor area was resected continuously using a 45- or 60-mm linear stapler. The specimen was put into the plastic bag and retrieved from the single port site. After the single port device or surgical glove had been removed, the gastric orifice was closed using absorbable sutures. The stomach was re-inflated to confirm no bleeding or air leakage from the repaired site. The umbilical wound was closed without drainage tube.

POSTOPERATIVE EVALUATION

We postoperatively evaluated the passage condition at the EGJ and the deformity of the residual stomach in all patients on the postoperative day 1 by an upper gastrointestinal radiological series, and followed by gastroscopy every 6 mo thereafter. Further treatment for gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs) was considered according to the results of immunohistochemical tumor staging.

DISCUSSION

Surgical resections for GSTs are classified into open, endoscopic or laparoscopic procedures. The selection

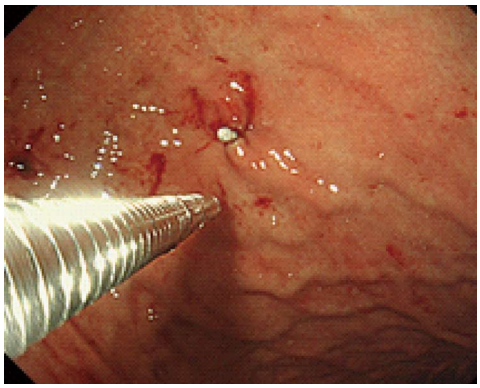


Figure 3 The hole of 3-mm port site was closed by a clip from the inside of the stomach.

of the procedure depends on the characteristics of the tumor, including its size, location and growth condition. In particular, laparoscopic intragastric resection can be modified for tumors located near the EGJ or pyloric ring, in order to avoid gastrectomy or stomach deformity after resection. From the viewpoint of minimal surgical invasiveness, several laparoscopic intragastric approaches have been reported, but the role of oral endoscopy for intragastric resection of GSTs has been emphasized.

The indications for intragastric resection also depend on the characteristics of the tumor. In general, tumors amenable to this technique are 2-5 cm in size and located on the posterior wall of the upper third of stomach, or close to the EGJ. In our experience, tumors more than 5 cm in size or 8 cm^2 in cross-sectional area require an additional gastrostomy for removal of the specimen from the stomach, because those sizes cannot be passed through the EGJ using an oral endoscope. However, when the tumor is less than 2 cm in size, resection depends on the results of FNA. Furthermore, when the tumor is more than 5 cm in size, a transgastric approach is selected for removal[4,5].

The actual resection method involved the use of an endo-linear stapler, coagulating shears or electrocautery. Stapled resection is more beneficial to provide with less operation time and blood loss, and can omit the suture of the resected area. In the resection process using an endo-linear stapler, if the 12-mm port is relatively close to the tumor, or if a tumor is larger than 5 cm, application of an endo-linear stapler is not easy, even if the stomach is inflated, because of the practical movable length of the stapler or the small opening of the stapler jaw[4,5]. Therefore we often use a minimum-length (30-mm) linear stapler, and place the 12-mm port on the greater curvature of the distal stomach under the guidance of oral endoscope. However, for any tumor located on the level of Z-line, submucosal dissection is applied circumferentially using electrocautery to prevent stenosis of the EGJ[9].

For successful intragastric resection of a GST, the use of an oral endoscope is mandatory for defining

Table 1 Basic data of the literature

Ref.	Year	Case	Gender (M/F)	Age (mean)	Location (U/M/L)	Distant from EGJ (mm)	Size (mm)
Choi and Oh[12]	2000	9	NA	NA	9/0/0	NA	NA
Matthews *et al*[13]	2002	3	NA	NA	3/0/0	NA	NA
Walsh *et al*[14]	2003	11	NA	NA	11/0/0	NA	24-85
Pross *et al*[15]	2003	5	NA	NA	5/0/0	NA	34 (28-41)
Uchikoshi *et al*[16]	2004	7	NA	NA	7/0/0	NA	27-75
Li *et al*[17]	2008	3	0/3	77	2/1/0	37 (30-50)	28 (20-40)
Na *et al*[7]	2011	7	3/4	65	6/1/0	NA	27 (23-38)
Sahm *et al*[18]	2011	7	NA	NA	NA	NA	38 (28-48)
Shim *et al*[9]	2011	6	3/3	48	7/0/0	NA	27 (15-40)
Tagaya *et al*[5]	2013	13	5/8	61	10/3/0	40 (10-70)	27 (10-65)
de Vogelaere *et al*[19]	2013	3	NA	68	3/0/0	NA	38 (27-68)
Dong *et al*[20]	2014	8	3/5	51	6/2/0	NA	28 (15-45)

NA: Not available.

Table 2 Clinical data of the literature

Ref.	Year	Operation time (min)	Complication	POHS (d)	Recurrence	Follow up (mo)
Choi and Oh[12]	2000	100-140	Open conversion: 1	5.9	None	Up to 42
Matthews *et al*[13]	2002	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Walsh *et al*[14]	2003	186 (120-320)	None	3.0-8.0	None	16.2 (1-32)
Pross *et al*[15]	2003	85-105	None	4.0-7.0	None	NA
Uchikoshi *et al*[16]	2004	141 (95-200)	Open conversion: 1	7.6	1 in 2 yr	14-99
Li *et al*[17]	2008	192 (140-240)	Staple line bleeding: 1	7.7	None	8-57
Na *et al*[7]	2011	86 (70-105)	Wound bleeding: 1	5.7	None	8.5 (1-23.3)
Sahm *et al*[18]	2011	NA	None	6.1	NA	NA
Shim *et al*[9]	2011	128 (105-145)	None	4.3	NA	NA
Tagaya *et al*[5]	2013	176 (132-217)	None	7.5	None	121.7 (1-192)
de Vogelaere *et al*[19]	2013	75 (67-82)	None	5.0	None	NA
Dong *et al*[20]	2014	85 (60-130)	None	7.4	None	NA

POHS: Postoperative hospital stay; NA: Not available.

precisely the location of the tumor, for determining the port placement site in the stomach, for assisting intragastric resection, for confirming hemostasis at the staple line, for retrieval of the specimen *via* the mouth, and for checking the presence of any air leakage from the resected area after re-inflation of the stomach. Schubert *et al*[10] have also reported that intraoperative flexible endoscopy has several advantages including facilitation of the trans-illumination of the gastric lesion during laparoscopic observation, elimination of preoperative tattooing of the lesion, and evaluation of the repaired gastric opening for any leakage after resection. Recently, Hiki *et al*[11] have reported laparoscopic and endoscopic cooperative surgery (LECS) for resection of GISTs. This method makes it possible to obtain an adequate cutting line independently of tumor location, eliminate an unnecessary resection of the gastric wall around the tumor in the setting of exogastric resection, and minimize any deformity of the stomach after resection. However, its indications are limited to intragastric growth-type tumors less than 5 cm in size, those with no direct tumor exposure, and those with no ulceration, in view of the attendant risk of dissemination. It is anticipated that oral endoscopy during laparoscopic procedures will become increasingly important in order to achieve minimal surgical invasiveness.

There are 18 reports covering laparoscopic intragastric resection of GSTs published between 2000 and 2014[5-10,12-23]. Six of them were excluded because their data were mixed with those for exogastric and transgastric procedures, or for single cases. We reviewed previous reports describing laparoscopic intragastric surgery (LIS) for GSTs (Tables 1 and 2)[5,7,9,12-20]. The number of cases ranged from 3 to 13, with a mean of 7 cases. The mean patient age was 62 years (range: 48-77 years). The tumor was located in the upper stomach in almost all cases (96.3%), with the exception of 3 cases. The mean size of the tumor was 31 mm (range: 27-38 mm). The common indications for intragastric resection of GSTs were a tumor location in the upper third of the stomach and posterior wall, intragastric growth, and a tumor diameter of less than 5 cm. The mean operation time was 134 min (range: 75-192 min). There were 4 complications (5.2%), including conversion to open laparotomy in 2 cases, bleeding from the staple line and wound in one case each, respectively. The mean postoperative hospital stay was 6.4 d (range: 4.3-7.7 d). The mean follow-up period was 48.8 mo (range: 8.5-121.7 mo), and only one case of tumor recurrence was recorded. However, the recurrence rate appears to depend on the size of the tumor: Nakamori

et al[22] reported that the recurrence rate increased with tumor size, and that the average period until recurrence was 23.6 mo. Evaluation of recurrence required a follow-up period of more than 2 years. This procedure has one limitation of consuming the number of linear staples, approximately 3 being necessary per procedure. When considering the possibility of recurrence, intragastric resection of GSTs using laparoscopy and oral endoscopy is suitable for tumors less than 5 cm in size and located in the upper third of the stomach.

Transumbilical single-incision laparoscopic abdominal surgery was introduced in 2007 and has since become disseminated worldwide. We have also applied single-incision laparoscopic local resection of the stomach for GSTs showing extragastric growth. There are a few reports[7,8] describing single-port access using a single port devices for tumors showing intragastric growth. Na *et al*[7] reported that a single-incision intragastric approach did not require the use of intraoperative oral endoscopy or pneumoperitoneum, and that the technique differed in three ways from the conventional approach: the operation time was reduced because of the use of a single gastrostomy and extracorporeal repair, the specimen was easily retrieved from the gastric opening without using an endoscope, and a better cosmetic outcome was achieved at the umbilicus. Morales-Conde *et al*[8] also reported intragastric endoscopically assisted single-incision surgery for GST at the EGJ. The single-site approach avoids multiple punctures of the stomach, and allows retrieval of larger specimens. However, this approach should be limited to selected cases involving tumors less than 5 cm in diameter without ulceration because of possible tumor rapture due to the complicated procedures employed.

In conclusion, intragastric surgery using laparoscopy and oral endoscopy can be considerably beneficial for patients with GSTs located in the upper third of the stomach. From the viewpoint of minimal surgical invasiveness, the significance of oral endoscopy during laparoscopic procedures is expected to increase for tumors in the stomach.

REFERENCES

1 **Tagaya N**, Mikami H, Igarashi A, Ishikawa K, Kogure H, Ohyama O. Laparoscopic local resection for benign nonepithelial gastric tumors. *J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A* 1997; **7**: 53-58 [PMID: 9453865]

2 **Tagaya N**, Kita J, Kogure H, Kubota K. Laparoscopic intragastric resection of gastric leiomyoma using needlescopic instruments. Case report. *Surg Endosc* 2001; **15**: 414 [PMID: 11409411]

3 **Tagaya N**, Mikami H, Kogure H, Kubota K, Hosoya Y, Nagai H. Laparoscopic intragastric stapled resection of gastric submucosal tumors located near the esophagogastric junction. *Surg Endosc* 2002; **16**: 177-179 [PMID: 11961634]

4 **Tagaya N**, Mikami H, Kubota K. Laparoscopic resection of gastrointestinal mesenchymal tumors located in the upper stomach. *Surg Endosc* 2004; **18**: 1469-1474 [PMID: 15791371]

5 **Tagaya N**, Kubota Y, Makino N, Takegami M, Saito K, Okuyama T, Yoshiba H, Sugamata Y, Oya M. Gastrointestinal Endoscopy: Laparoscopic intra-gastric resection of gastric sub-mucosal tumors under oral endoscopic guidance. *J Gastrointest Dig Syst* 2013; **S2**: 004 [DOI: 10.4172/2161-069X.S2-004]

6 **Sasaki A**, Koeda K, Obuchi T, Nakajima J, Nishizuka S, Terashima M, Wakabayashi G. Tailored laparoscopic resection for suspected gastric gastrointestinal stromal tumors. *Surgery* 2010; **147**: 516-520 [PMID: 20004449 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2009.10.035]

7 **Na JU**, Lee SI, Noh SM. The single incision laparoscopic intragastric wedge resection of gastric submucosal tumor. *J Gastric Cancer* 2011; **11**: 225-229 [PMID: 22324014 DOI: 10.5230/jgc.2011.11.4.225]

8 **Morales-Conde S**, Alarcón I, Ortiz-Moyano C, Barranco A, Padillo FJ, Socas M. Intragastric endoscopic assisted single incision surgery for gastric leiomyoma of the esophagogastric junction. *Case Rep Gastrointest Med* 2013; **2013**: 391430 [PMID: 24416603 DOI: 10.1155/2013/391430]

9 **Shim JH**, Lee HH, Yoo HM, Jeon HM, Park CH, Kim JG, Song KY. Intragastric approach for submucosal tumors located near the Z-line: a hybrid laparoscopic and endoscopic technique. *J Surg Oncol* 2011; **104**: 312-315 [PMID: 21465489 DOI: 10.1002/jso.21934]

10 **Schubert D**, Kuhn R, Nestler G, Kahl S, Ebert MP, Malfertheiner P, Lippert H, Pross M. Laparoscopic-endoscopic rendezvous resection of upper gastrointestinal tumors. *Dig Dis* 2005; **23**: 106-112 [PMID: 16352889]

11 **Hiki N**, Yamamoto Y, Fukunaga T, Yamaguchi T, Nunobe S, Tokunaga M, Miki A, Ohyama S, Seto Y. Laparoscopic and endoscopic cooperative surgery for gastrointestinal stromal tumor dissection. *Surg Endosc* 2008; **22**: 1729-1735 [PMID: 18074180]

12 **Choi YB**, Oh ST. Laparoscopy in the management of gastric submucosal tumors. *Surg Endosc* 2000; **14**: 741-745 [PMID: 10954821]

13 **Matthews BD**, Walsh RM, Kercher KW, Sing RF, Pratt BL, Answini GA, Heniford BT. Laparoscopic vs open resection of gastric stromal tumors. *Surg Endosc* 2002; **16**: 803-807 [PMID: 11997826]

14 **Walsh RM**, Ponsky J, Brody F, Matthews BD, Heniford BT. Combined endoscopic/laparoscopic intragastric resection of gastric stromal tumors. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2003; **7**: 386-392 [PMID: 12654564]

15 **Pross M**, Wolff S, Nestler G, Schubert D, Kahl S, Lippert H. A technique for endo-organ resection of gastric wall tumors using one intragastric trocar. *Endoscopy* 2003; **35**: 613-615 [PMID: 12822099]

16 **Uchikoshi F**, Ito T, Nishida T, Kitagawa T, Endo S, Matsuda H. Laparoscopic intragastric resection of gastric stromal tumor located at the esophago-cardiac junction. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 2004; **14**: 1-4 [PMID: 15259576]

17 **Li VK**, Hung WK, Chung CK, Ying MW, Lam BY, Kan DM, Chan MC. Laparoscopic intragastric approach for stromal tumours located at the posterior gastric wall. *Asian J Surg* 2008; **31**: 6-10 [PMID: 18334462 DOI: 10.1016/S1015-9584(08)60047-0]

18 **Sahm M**, Pross M, Lippert H. Intraluminal resection of gastric tumors using intragastric trocar technique. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 2011; **21**: e169-e172 [PMID: 21857452 DOI: 10.1097/SLE.0b013e318221749c]

19 **DE Vogelaere K**, VAN DE Winkel N, Simoens C, Delvaux G. Intragastric SILS for GIST, a new challenge in oncologic surgery: first experiences. *Anticancer Res* 2013; **33**: 3359-3363 [PMID: 23898104]

20 **Dong HY**, Wang YL, Jia XY, Li J, Li GD, Li YQ. Modified laparoscopic intragastric surgery and endoscopic full-thickness resection for gastric stromal tumor originating from the muscularis propria. *Surg Endosc* 2014; **28**: 1447-1453 [PMID: 24671350 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-013-3375-8]

21 **Ludwig K**, Weiner R, Bernhardt J. [Minimally invasive resections of gastric tumors]. *Chirurg* 2003; **74**: 632-637 [PMID:

12883790]
22 **Nakamori M**, Iwahashi M, Nakamura M, Tabuse K, Mori K, Taniguchi K, Aoki Y, Yamaue H. Laparoscopic resection for gastrointestinal stromal tumors of the stomach. *Am J Surg* 2008; **196**: 425-429 [PMID: 18466871 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjsurg.2007.10.012]
23 **Vecchio R**, Marchese S, Amore FF, La Corte F, Ferla F, Spataro L, Intagliata E. Laparoscopic-endoscopic rendezvous resection of iuxta-cardial gastric GIST. *G Chir* 2013; **34**: 145-148 [PMID: 23837950]

P- Reviewer: Surlin V **S- Editor**: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Zhang DN

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.59

World J Gastrointest Endosc 2015 January 16; 7(1): 59-65
ISSN 1948-5190 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Current status of single-balloon enteroscopy: Insertability and clinical applications

Takuji Kawamura, Koji Uno, Kiyohito Tanaka, Kenjiro Yasuda

Takuji Kawamura, Koji Uno, Kiyohito Tanaka, Kenjiro Yasuda, Department of Gastroenterology, Kyoto Second Red Cross Hospital, Kyoto 602-8026, Japan
Takuji Kawamura, Department of Stress Science, Institute of Health Biosciences, Tokushima University Graduate School, Tokushima 770-8503, Japan
Author contributions: All the authors contributed to this paper.

Correspondence to: Takuji Kawamura, MD, Department of Gastroenterology, Kyoto Second Red Cross Hospital, 355-5 Haruobi-cho, Kamigyo-ku, Kyoto 602-8026, Japan. kawamurat@kyoto2.jrc.or.jp
Telephone: +81-75-2315171
Fax: +81-75-2563451
Received: August 26, 2014
Peer-review started: August 27, 2014
First decision: September 16, 2014
Revised: September 30, 2014
Accepted: November 7, 2014
Article in press: November 10, 2014
Published online: January 16, 2015

Abstract

The single-balloon enteroscopy (SBE) system was launched in 2007, proposed as a simpler method than double-balloon enteroscopy (DBE). Controversy surrounds whether the SBE system has the same insertability as DBE. However, many methods have been proposed to improve the depth of insertion with the SBE system, involving several techniques and endoscopic accessories. SBE is used for investigating not only small bowel diseases, but also diseases of the pancreatobiliary and colonic structures. SBE is a necessary advancement for many endoscopic procedures and applications in modern clinical practice. In our review, we summarized the current literature concerning the insertability of SBE and described the technical aspects of improving the rate of deep insertion in SBE procedures. In addition, the recent applications of SBE to diseases besides those of the small bowel are described.

Key words: Single-balloon enteroscopy; Double-balloon enteroscopy; Small-bowel endoscopy; Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography; Endoscopic submucosal dissection

Core tip: The insertability of the single-balloon enteroscopy (SBE) system can be improved by technical innovations and by using endoscopic accessories such as carbon dioxide insufflation equipment. SBE is used not only useful for small bowel diseases, but also for colonic lesions and pancreatobiliary diseases. The SBE system is a necessary advancement for many endoscopic procedures in modern clinical practice.

Kawamura T, Uno K, Tanaka K, Yasuda K. Current status of single-balloon enteroscopy: Insertability and clinical applications. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; 7(1): 59-65 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5190/full/v7/i1/59.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.59

INTRODUCTION

Double-balloon enteroscopy (DBE) was developed by Yamamoto *et al*[1]. Since then, endoscopic observation of the entire small intestine has been possible without surgical intervention. The single-balloon enteroscopy

(SBE) system was launched in 2007 by Olympus Medical Systems (Tokyo, Japan) as an alternative to DBE[2-5]. SBE is a simpler method because the second balloon at the tip of the enteroscope is not present. However, controversy surrounds whether the SBE system offers the same insertability and diagnostic yield as DBE.

The purpose of this review was to summarize the current literature concerning the insertability and diagnostic yield of SBE and to describe the technical aspects of improving the depth of insertion in SBE procedures. In addition, recent applications to diseases besides those of the small bowel are described. While spiral enteroscopy is another alternative method of DBE[6-8], this method is not widely used in Japan; therefore, we did not discuss spiral enteroscopy in the present article. Details of the instruments used, and the basic principles of the insertion technique of SBE, have already been reviewed by Manno *et al*[9] in 2012.

INSERTABILITY OF SBE

Insertability compared with DBE

Total enteroscopy can be achieved using SBE. Usually, total small bowel visualization is confirmed by inserting the enteroscope through both the oral and anal routes and marking the midway point with an Indian ink tattoo or endoscopic clipping (Figures 1 and 2). The initial experience reports of SBE in Japan have been characterized by total enteroscopy rates of 12.5% to 71.4% (Table 1)[2-5].

Three randomized, controlled trials thus far have compared the rates of total small bowel visualization by DBE and SBE[10-12]. May *et al*[10] reported that complete enteroscopy was achieved with the DBE technique in 66% (33/50) of cases and only 22% (11/50) with the SBE technique ($P < 0.0001$). However, this study had a number of significant limitations. One was that the SBE system used in this study was not the original system produced by Olympus, but a DBE system made by Fujifilm Corporation (Tokyo, Japan) without the tip balloon attached. In 2011, Takano *et al*[12] also reported worse results for the insertability of the SBE system developed by Olympus compared to those for the DBE system developed by Fujifilm. The total enteroscopy rate was 0% in the SBE group and 57.1% in the DBE group ($P = 0.002$). This result suggested that the insertability of SBE might be inferior to that of DBE. However, Domagk *et al*[11] reported that DBE and SBE have comparable performance in the evaluation of the small bowel. Their study revealed that complete visualization of the small bowel was achieved in 18% and 11% of procedures in the DBE and SBE groups, respectively. These randomized control studies yielded conflicting results concerning the insertability of SBE compared to that of DBE.

We have discussed the insertability of SBE using total enteroscopy rate as a comparative parameter, because none of the currently known methods of estimating insertion depth are ideal[13]. However, the clinical impact of total enteroscopy rate is controversial, because in majority of the patients the fact whether total enteroscopy is achieved is not necessary to diagnose small bowel diseases[14]. Lenz *et al*[8] indicated that the first-choice enteroscope should be selected according to availability, physicians' experience, and clinical implications.

In the next section, the many methods of improving the insertability of SBE will be discussed.

Methods of improving the depth of insertion

The most important difference between SBE and DBE is the manner in which the small intestine is held by the tip of the enteroscope during sliding tube insertion. If the holding force is not sufficient, the enteroscope will slip back. Ohtsuka *et al*[15] discussed the method of improving the holding force in the small intestine using the SBE technique. To prevent the scope from slipping back during sliding tube insertion, it is important to use both upward and left angulation, as this helps to increase the holding force applied by the tip of the enteroscope. Furthermore, they recommended the use of a distal attachment to assist the fixation of folds in the small intestine.

A recent study suggested the usefulness of carbon dioxide insufflation during the SBE procedure in improving intubation depth[16,17]. Li *et al*[17] reported that the total enteroscopy rate of the carbon dioxide insufflation group was significantly higher than that of the air insufflation group (34.9% *vs* 17.6%; $P = 0.006$). Lenz *et al*[16] reported that oral intubation depth was significantly higher in the carbon dioxide group than in the air group (258 ± 84 cm *vs* 192 ± 42 cm; $P < 0.05$) in patients with previous abdominal surgery.

By using the techniques described above alongside carbon dioxide insufflation, the depth of SBE insertion devices can be improved. Interestingly, Ohtsuka *et al*[15] reported several cases of total enteroscopy using only the anal approach.

Complications

SBE is a safe diagnostic endoscopic procedure. However, serious complications such as acute pancreatitis[18,19] and perforation[20] could occur, although the rates of these complications are very low. Aktas *et al*[21] reported that while post-SBE hyperamylasemia occurred in 16% (13/81) patients, no acute pancreatitis was observed in 105 consecutive patients undergoing peroral approach SBE. Lenz *et al*[22] reported that the rate of severe adverse events after SBE procedures was only 0.6% (2/298) and did not differ significantly from that after DBE procedures in their large case series.

CLINICAL APPLICATIONS OF SBE

SBE for small bowel diseases

Parikh *et al*[23] summarized the clinical applications of SBE for small bowel diseases in 615 patients reported

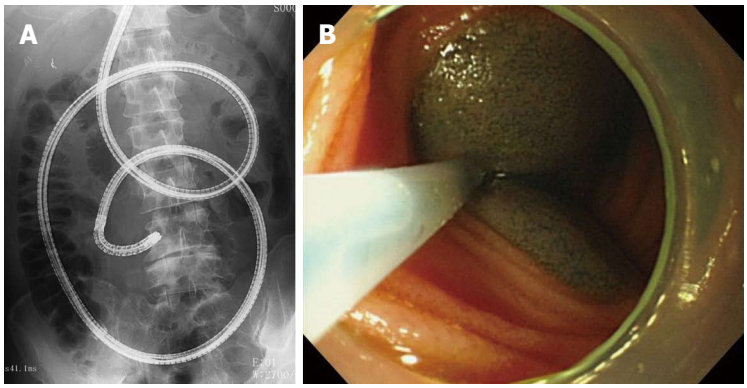


Figure 1 Case of total enteroscopy. A: Single-balloon enteroscope inserted orally; B: Indian ink was used as a tattoo in the deepest part of the intestine.

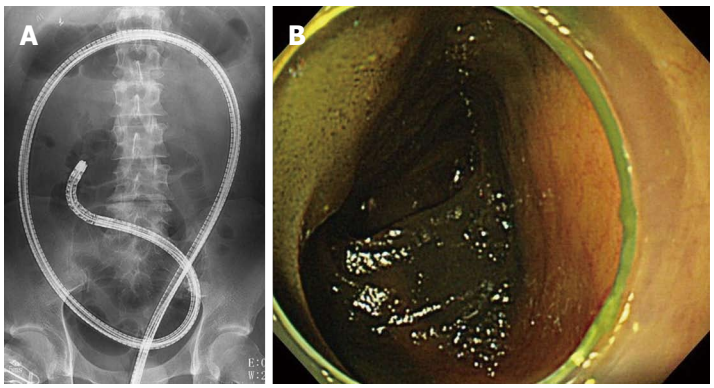


Figure 2 Case of total enteroscopy (continued). A: Single-balloon enteroscope inserted anally; B: Tattoo marked when enteroscope was inserted orally was confirmed.

Table 1 Rates of total enteroscopy using the single-balloon enteroscope

Ref.	Study design	No. of cases	Rate of total enteroscopy	Year
Tsujikawa *et al*[5]	Case series	78 exams in 41 pts	6/24 (25%)	2008
Kawamura *et al*[2]	Case series	37 exams in 27 pts	1/8 (12.5%)	2008
Ohtsuka *et al*[4]	Case series	48 exams in 30 pts	5/7 (71.4%)	2008
Kobayashi *et al*[3]	Case series	50 exams in 40 pts	3/5 (60%)	2008
Ramchandani *et al*[24]	Case series	131 exams in 106 pts	5/20 (25%)	2009
May *et al*[10]	RCT	50 pts	11/50 (22%)	2010
Domagk *et al*[11]	RCT	65 pts	7/65 (11%)	2011
Takano *et al*[12]	RCT	14 pts	0/14 (0%)	2011
Li *et al*[17]	RCT (CO_2 use)	106 pts	37/106 (34.9%)	2014
Li *et al*[17]	RCT (air use)	108 pts	19/108 (17.6%)	2014

RCT: Randomized controlled trial; pts: Patients.

thus far in their review article. The most common indication of SBE was obscure gastrointestinal bleeding (51%), followed by evaluation for Crohn disease (13%) and polyp/mass (8%). The most common lesions of the small bowel were angioectasias (22%), ulcers (15%), and polyp/mass (10%), and the most common interventions included hemostasis with argon plasma coagulation (22%), followed by polypectomy (3%) and dilation (3%).

Although there were conflicting results regarding the insertability of SBE compared with that of DBE, the diagnostic yield of small intestinal lesions using SBE was reported as equal to that of DBE. Diagnostic yields were 41%-65% in initial experience reports[2,5,24] and 37%-50% in randomized control studies[10-12], which were almost same as the rates of the DBE system.

Recently, SBE for disease in regions other than the small bowel has been reported. In the next session, the clinical applications of SBE for colonic and pancreatobiliary lesions are discussed.

SBE for colonic lesions

There are two main reasons for performing SBE for colonic lesions: One is when colonoscopy fails, and another is when endoscopic submucosal dissection (ESD) is required in difficult positions.

An elongated colon and adhesion would make it

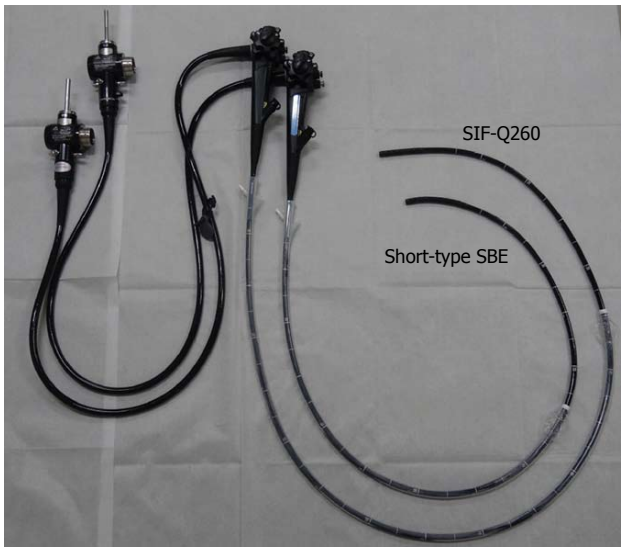


Figure 3 Short-type prototype single-balloon enteroscope. This scope has a working length of 1520 mm and an inner channel of 3.2 mm, which are compatible with those of many endoscopic accessories. SBE: Single-balloon enteroscopy.

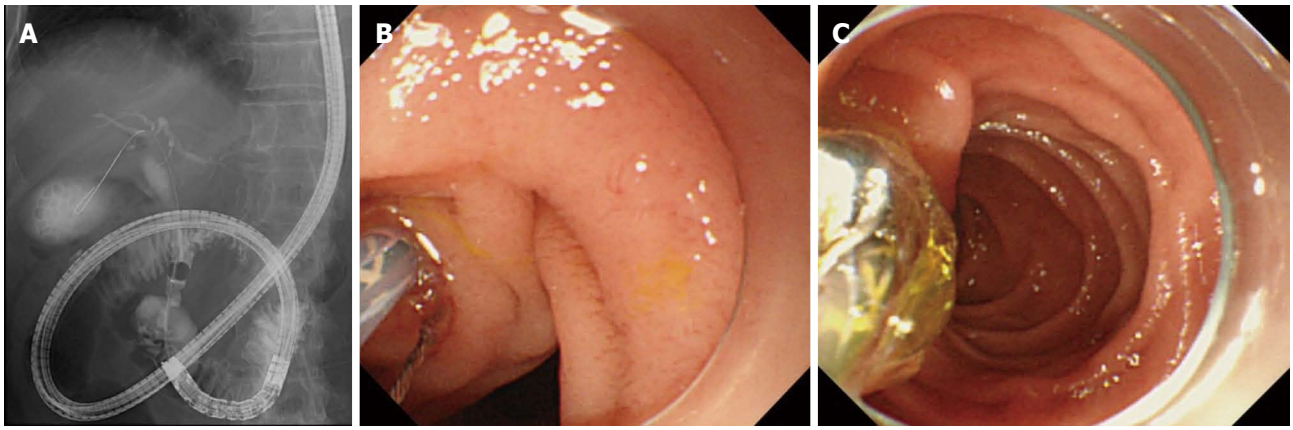


Figure 4 Case of common bile duct stones treated using a short-type prototype single-balloon enteroscope. Conventional endoscopic accessories such as retrieval balloon catheter (A), endoscopic sphincterotomy catheter (B), and endoscopic balloon dilation catheter (C), were used in this procedure.

difficult to achieve total colonoscopy. SBE is used to prevent stretching of the intestine. A case series suggested that the SBE system is successful in almost all patients in whom the cecum cannot be reached[25-27]. A randomized control trial revealed that the utility of SBE and DBE for colonoscopy seemed comparable in patients with incomplete previous colonoscopy using a conventional colonoscope[28].

ESD for colonic neoplasm is a technically challenging procedure, especially if the target neoplasm resides in a difficult to reach position. An overtube with a balloon is used to stabilize the endoscope during the ESD procedure. Ohya *et al*[29] reported the usefulness of a therapeutic gastroscope (GIF-Q260J; Olympus Medical systems, Tokyo) with an SBE overtube for colonic ESD. The SBE overtube was too long to use with the gastroscope, so a modified and shortened overtube of 70 cm from the distal end was used.

Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography for patients with surgically altered gastrointestinal anatomy

SBE is useful for both small bowel diseases and pancreatobiliary diseases in patients with altered gastrointestinal anatomy. Many studies have reported the usefulness of the SBE system for endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) with altered gastrointestinal anatomy, especially in patients with Roux-en-Y anastomosis[30-43]. However, a limited number of ERCP accessories are compatible with the SBE system because of its narrow inner channel diameter and working length compared to those of a conventional duodenoscope. Recently, the usefulness of the short-type SBE prototype (SIF-Y0004; Olympus medical systems, Tokyo) has been reported[44-49]. The short-type SBE has a working length of 1520 mm and an inner channel diameter of 3.2 mm (Figure 3), which are both compatible with many conventional ERCP accessories (Figure 4). In the future, this short-type SBE system may become the first-choice endoscope for ERCP in patients with altered gastrointestinal anatomy.

Other applications of SBE

Recently, the efficacy and safety of SBE for children with Crohn disease and Peutz-Jeghers syndrome have been

reported[50-52]. SBE is expected to be as useful in children as in adult patients.

Endoscopic removal of foreign objects, diagnosis of parasite infestation, and SBE-assisted direct percutaneous endoscopic jejunostomy are reported as uncommon uses of SBE[53-56]. In cases in which the target regions lies in the small bowel, not far from the ligament of Treitz or the terminal ileum, the balloon at the tip of the enteroscope may not be needed. SBE might have advantages compared to DBE in such cases because of SBE involves a greater ease of preparation.

FUTURE PERSPECTIVES

In the future, detailed diagnosis will become more important and the optimal therapy after reaching the target region will be essential. For example, the usefulness of high-resolution enteroscopy, image-enhanced enteroscopy, magnified enteroscopy, and endoscopic ultrasonography[57-59] by using SBE will need to be discussed. Furthermore, several endoscopic accessories for ERCP and ESD performed using SBE will be required. Endoscopic procedures and applications using the SBE system are promising.

REFERENCES

1 **Yamamoto H**, Sekine Y, Sato Y, Higashizawa T, Miyata T, Iino S, Ido K, Sugano K. Total enteroscopy with a nonsurgical steerable double-balloon method. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2001; **53**: 216-220 [PMID: 11174299 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2001.112181]

2 **Kawamura T**, Yasuda K, Tanaka K, Uno K, Ueda M, Sanada K, Nakajima M. Clinical evaluation of a newly developed single-balloon enteroscope. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 1112-1116 [PMID: 18599052 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.03.1063]

3 **Kobayashi K**, Haruki S, Sada M, Katsumata T, Saigenji K. [Single-balloon enteroscopy]. *Nihon Rinsho* 2008; **66**: 1371-1378 [PMID: 18616130]

4 **Ohtsuka K**, Kashida H, Kodama K, Mizuno K, Inoue H, Kudo S. Diagnosis and treatment of small bowel diseases with a newly developed single balloon endoscope. *Digest Endosc* 2008; **20**: 134-137 [DOI: 10.1111/j.1443-1661.2008.00791.x]

5 **Tsujikawa T**, Saitoh Y, Andoh A, Imaeda H, Hata K, Minematsu H, Senoh K, Hayafuji K, Ogawa A, Nakahara T, Sasaki M, Fujiyama Y. Novel single-balloon enteroscopy for diagnosis and treatment of the small intestine: preliminary experiences. *Endoscopy* 2008; **40**: 11-15 [PMID: 18058613 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-966976]

6 **Akerman PA**, Agrawal D, Cantero D, Pangtay J. Spiral enteroscopy with the new DSB overtube: a novel technique for deep peroral small-bowel intubation. *Endoscopy* 2008; **40**: 974-978 [PMID: 19065477 DOI: 10.1055/s-0028-1103402]

7 **Akerman PA**, Agrawal D, Chen W, Cantero D, Avila J, Pangtay J. Spiral enteroscopy: a novel method of enteroscopy by using the Endo-Ease Discovery SB overtube and a pediatric colonoscope. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2009; **69**: 327-332 [PMID: 19100974 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.07.042]

8 **Lenz P**, Domagk D. Double- vs. single-balloon vs. spiral enteroscopy. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2012; **26**: 303-313 [PMID: 22704572 DOI: 10.1016/j.bpg.2012.01.021]

9 **Manno M**, Barbera C, Bertani H, Manta R, Mirante VG, Dabizzi E, Caruso A, Pigo F, Olivetti G, Conigliaro R. Single balloon enteroscopy: Technical aspects and clinical applications. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **4**: 28-32 [PMID: 22347529 DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v4.i2.28]

10 **May A**, Färber M, Aschmoneit I, Pohl J, Manner H, Lotterer E, Möschler O, Kunz J, Gossner L, Mönkemüller K, Ell C. Prospective multicenter trial comparing push-and-pull enteroscopy with the single- and double-balloon techniques in patients with small-bowel disorders. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 575-581 [PMID: 20051942 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.712]

11 **Domagk D**, Mensink P, Aktas H, Lenz P, Meister T, Luegering A, Ullerich H, Aabakken L, Heinecke A, Domschke W, Kuipers E, Bretthauer M. Single- vs. double-balloon enteroscopy in small-bowel diagnostics: a randomized multicenter trial. *Endoscopy* 2011; **43**: 472-476 [PMID: 21384320 DOI: 10.1055/s-0030-1256247]

12 **Takano N**, Yamada A, Watabe H, Togo G, Yamaji Y, Yoshida H, Kawabe T, Omata M, Koike K. Single-balloon versus double-balloon endoscopy for achieving total enteroscopy: a randomized, controlled trial. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **73**: 734-739 [PMID: 21272875 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.10.047]

13 **Moreels TG**. Device-assisted enteroscopy: how deep is deep enteroscopy? *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **76**: 981-982 [PMID: 23078922 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.08.030]

14 **May A**. How much importance do we have to place on complete enteroscopy? *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **73**: 740-742 [PMID: 21457816 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.11.030]

15 **Ohtuka K**, Kudo S. [The insertion method for the single balloon endoscopy]. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2009; **51**: 1172-1180 [DOI: 10.11280/gee.51.1172]

16 **Lenz P**, Meister T, Manno M, Pennazio M, Conigliaro R, Lebkücher S, Ullerich H, Schmedt A, Floer M, Beyna T, Lenze F, Domagk D. CO2 insufflation during single-balloon enteroscopy: a multicenter randomized controlled trial. *Endoscopy* 2014; **46**: 53-58 [PMID: 24353124 DOI: 10.1055/s-0033-1359041]

17 **Li X**, Zhao YJ, Dai J, Li XB, Xue HB, Zhang Y, Xiong GS, Ohtsuka K, Gao YJ, Liu Q, Song Y, Fang JY, Ge ZZ. Carbon dioxide insufflation improves the intubation depth and total enteroscopy rate in single-balloon enteroscopy: a randomised, controlled, double-blind trial. *Gut* 2014; **63**: 1560-1565 [PMID: 24626435 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2013-306069]

18 **Yip WM**, Lok KH, Lai L, Li KF, Li KK, Szeto ML. Acute pancreatitis: rare complication of retrograde single-balloon enteroscopy. *Endoscopy* 2009; **41** Suppl 2: E324 [PMID: 19921613 DOI: 10.1055/s-0029-1215002]

19 **Sharma MK**, Sharma P, Garg H, Sehgal L, Bhatia V. Clinical acute pancreatitis following anterograde single balloon enteroscopy. *Endoscopy* 2011; **43** Suppl 2 UCTN: E20-E21 [PMID: 21271522 DOI: 10.1055/s-0030-1255892]

20 **Tominaga K**, Iida T, Nakamura Y, Nagao J, Yokouchi Y, Maetani I. Small intestinal perforation of endoscopically unrecognized lesions during peroral single-balloon enteroscopy. *Endoscopy* 2008; **40** Suppl 2: E213-E214 [PMID: 18819062 DOI: 10.1055/s-2008-1077405]

21 **Aktas H**, de Ridder L, Haringsma J, Kuipers EJ, Mensink PB. Complications of single-balloon enteroscopy: a prospective evaluation of 166 procedures. *Endoscopy* 2010; **42**: 365-368 [PMID: 20178072 DOI: 10.1055/s-0029-1243931]

22 **Lenz P**, Roggel M, Domagk D. Double- vs. single-balloon enteroscopy: single center experience with emphasis on procedural performance. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2013; **28**: 1239-1246 [PMID: 23503664 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-013-1673-1]

23 **Parikh DA**, Mittal M, Leung FW, Mann SK. Efficacy of single balloon enteroscopy: a 2 year Veterans Affairs medical center experience with a systematic review of the literature. *J Interv Gastroenterol* 2013; **3**: 116-121 [PMID: 24498527 DOI: 10.7178/jig.129]

24 **Ramchandani M**, Reddy DN, Gupta R, Lakhtakia S, Tandan M, Rao GV, Darisetty S. Diagnostic yield and therapeutic

impact of single-balloon enteroscopy: series of 106 cases. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **24**: 1631-1638 [PMID: 19686408 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2009.05936.x]
25 **Teshima CW**, Aktas H, Haringsma J, Kuipers EJ, Mensink PB. Single-balloon-assisted colonoscopy in patients with previously failed colonoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **71**: 1319-1323 [PMID: 20598261 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.02.003]
26 **Arai Y**, Kato T, Arihiro S, Itagaki M, Komoike N, Odagi I, Saruta M, Matsuoka M, Suzuki T, Tajiri H. Utility of single balloon enteroscopy (SBE) for difficult cases of total colonoscopy. *J Interv Gastroenterol* 2012; **2**: 12-14 [PMID: 22586543 DOI: 10.4161/jig.20127]
27 **Kobayashi K**, Mukae M, Ogawa T, Yokoyama K, Sada M, Koizumi W. Clinical usefulness of single-balloon endoscopy in patients with previously incomplete colonoscopy. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **5**: 117-121 [PMID: 23515370 DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v5.i3.117]
28 **Yamada A**, Watabe H, Takano N, Togo G, Yamaji Y, Yoshida H, Kawabe T, Omata M, Koike K. Utility of single and double balloon endoscopy in patients with difficult colonoscopy: a randomized controlled trial. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 4732-4736 [PMID: 23922470 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i29.4732]
29 **Ohya T**, Ohata K, Sumiyama K, Tsuji Y, Koba I, Matsuhashi N, Tajiri H. Balloon overtube-guided colorectal endoscopic submucosal dissection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 6086-6090 [PMID: 20027682 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.15.6086]
30 **Lenze F**, Meister T, Matern P, Heinzow HS, Domschke W, Ullerich H. Single-balloon enteroscopy-assisted endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreaticography in patients with surgically altered anatomy: higher failure rate in malignant biliary obstruction - a prospective single center cohort analysis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2014; **49**: 766-771 [PMID: 24694357 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2014.904397]
31 **Itokawa F**, Itoi T, Ishii K, Sofuni A, Moriyasu F. Single- and double-balloon enteroscopy-assisted endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography in patients with Roux-en-Y plus hepaticojejunostomy anastomosis and Whipple resection. *Dig Endosc* 2014; **26** Suppl 2: 136-143 [PMID: 24750164 DOI: 10.1111/den.12254]
32 **Kianička B**, Lata J, Novotný I, Dítě P, Vaníček J. Single balloon enteroscopy for endoscopic retrograde cholangiography in patients with Roux-en-Y hepaticojejuno anastomosis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 8047-8055 [PMID: 24307799 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i44.8047]
33 **Kawamura T**, Mandai K, Uno K, Yasuda K. Does single-balloon enteroscopy contribute to successful endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography in patients with surgically altered gastrointestinal anatomy? *ISRN Gastroenterol* 2013; **2013**: 214958 [PMID: 23762573 DOI: 10.1155/2013/214958]
34 **Seven G**, Kozarek RA. Endoscopic retrograde pancreatography using single balloon enteroscopy in a patient with smoldering pancreatitis in a distal jejunal pancreas transplant. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2012; **36**: e122-e125 [PMID: 22749699 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinre.2012.05.014]
35 **Costa-Genzini A**, Takahashi W, Dos Santos RG, Gaboardi MT, Noujaim HM, Yamashita ET, Perosa M, Genzini T. Single-balloon enteroscopy for treating Roux-en-Y choledochojejunostomy stenosis after liver transplantation: a case report. *Transplant Proc* 2012; **44**: 2503-2504 [PMID: 23026631 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2012.07.017]
36 **Itoi T**, Kikuyama M, Ishii K, Matsumura K, Sofuni A, Itokawa F. EUS-guided rendezvous with single-balloon enteroscopy for treatment of stenotic pancreaticojejunal anastomosis in post-Whipple patients (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **73**: 398-401 [PMID: 20875640 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.07.010]
37 **Wang AY**, Sauer BG, Behm BW, Ramanath M, Cox DG, Ellen KL, Shami VM, Kahaleh M. Single-balloon enteroscopy effectively enables diagnostic and therapeutic retrograde cholangiography in patients with surgically altered anatomy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **71**: 641-649 [PMID: 20189529 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2009.10.051]
38 **Saleem A**, Baron TH, Gostout CJ, Topazian MD, Levy MJ, Petersen BT, Wong Kee Song LM. Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography using a single-balloon enteroscope in patients with altered Roux-en-Y anatomy. *Endoscopy* 2010; **42**: 656-660 [PMID: 20589594 DOI: 10.1055/s-0030-1255557]
39 **Itoi T**, Ishii K, Sofuni A, Itokawa F, Tsuchiya T, Kurihara T, Tsuji S, Ikeuchi N, Umeda J, Moriyasu F. Single-balloon enteroscopy-assisted ERCP in patients with Billroth II gastrectomy or Roux-en-Y anastomosis (with video). *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 93-99 [PMID: 19809409 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.559]
40 **Di Pisa M**, Miraglia R, Volpes R, Gruttadauria S, Traina M. Single balloon enteroscopy for endoscopic retrograde cholangiography in a patient with hepaticojejunostomy after liver transplant. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2010; **2010**: 701696 [PMID: 20454574 DOI: 10.1155/2010/701696]
41 **Neumann H**, Fry LC, Meyer F, Malfertheiner P, Monkemuller K. Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography using the single balloon enteroscope technique in patients with Roux-en-Y anastomosis. *Digestion* 2009; **80**: 52-57 [PMID: 19478486 DOI: 10.1159/000216351]
42 **Itoi T**, Ishii K, Sofuni A, Itokawa F, Kurihara T, Tsuchiya T, Tsuji S, Umeda J, Moriyasu F. Single Balloon Enteroscopy-Assisted ERCP Using Rendezvous Technique for Sharp Angulation of Roux-en-Y Limb in a Patient with Bile Duct Stones. *Diagn Ther Endosc* 2009; **2009**: 154084 [PMID: 20169091 DOI: 10.1155/2009/154084]
43 **Dellon ES**, Kohn GP, Morgan DR, Grimm IS. Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography with single-balloon enteroscopy is feasible in patients with a prior Roux-en-Y anastomosis. *Dig Dis Sci* 2009; **54**: 1798-1803 [PMID: 18989776 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-008-0538-x]
44 **Shimatani M**, Takaoka M, Ikeura T, Mitsuyama T, Okazaki K. Evaluation of endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography using a newly developed short-type single-balloon endoscope in patients with altered gastrointestinal anatomy. *Dig Endosc* 2014; **26** Suppl 2: 147-155 [PMID: 24750166 DOI: 10.1111/den.12283]
45 **Kato H**, Tsutsumi K, Harada R, Okada H, Yamamoto K. Short double-balloon enteroscopy is feasible and effective for endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography in patients with surgically altered gastrointestinal anatomy. *Dig Endosc* 2014; **26** Suppl 2: 130-135 [PMID: 24750163 DOI: 10.1111/den.12251]
46 **Iwai T**, Kida M, Yamauchi H, Imaizumi H, Koizumi W. Short-type and conventional single-balloon enteroscopes for endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography in patients with surgically altered anatomy: single-center experience. *Dig Endosc* 2014; **26** Suppl 2: 156-163 [PMID: 24750167 DOI: 10.1111/den.12258]
47 **Yamauchi H**, Kida M, Okuwaki K, Miyazawa S, Iwai T, Takezawa M, Kikuchi H, Watanabe M, Imaizumi H, Koizumi W. Short-type single balloon enteroscope for endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography with altered gastrointestinal anatomy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 1728-1735 [PMID: 23555161 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i11.1728]
48 **Obana T**, Fujita N, Ito K, Noda Y, Kobayashi G, Horaguchi J, Koshita S, Kanno Y, Ogawa T, Hashimoto S, Masu K. Therapeutic endoscopic retrograde cholangiography using a single-balloon enteroscope in patients with Roux-en-Y anastomosis. *Dig Endosc* 2013; **25**: 601-607 [PMID: 23362835 DOI: 10.1111/den.12039]
49 **Kawamura T**, Uno K, Suzuki A, Mandai K, Nakase K, Tanaka K, Yasuda K. Clinical usefulness of a short-type, prototype single-balloon enteroscope for endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography in patients with

altered gastrointestinal anatomy: Preliminary experiences. *Dig Endosc* 2015; **27**: 82-86 [PMID: 25040667 DOI: 10.1111/den.12322]

50 **Bizzarri B**, Borrelli O, de'Angelis N, Ghiselli A, Nervi G, Manfredi M, de'Angelis GL. Management of duodenal-jejunal polyps in children with peutz-jeghers syndrome with single-balloon enteroscopy. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2014; **59**: 49-53 [PMID: 24590213 DOI: 10.1097/mpg.0000000000000351]

51 **Di Nardo G**, Oliva S, Aloi M, Rossi P, Casciani E, Masselli G, Ferrari F, Mallardo S, Stronati L, Cucchiara S. Usefulness of single-balloon enteroscopy in pediatric Crohn's disease. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **75**: 80-86 [PMID: 21855873 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.06.021]

52 **de Ridder L**, Mensink PB, Lequin MH, Aktas H, de Krijger RR, van der Woude CJ, Escher JC. Single-balloon enteroscopy, magnetic resonance enterography, and abdominal US useful for evaluation of small-bowel disease in children with (suspected) Crohn's disease. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **75**: 87-94 [PMID: 21963066 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.07.036]

53 **Xin L**, Liao Z, Du YQ, Jiang YP, Li ZS. Retained capsule endoscopy causing intestinal obstruction - Endoscopic retrieval by retrograde single-balloon enteroscopy. *J Interv Gastroenterol* 2012; **2**: 15-18 [PMID: 22586544 DOI: 10.4161/jig.20128]

54 **Fry LC**, Akbar Q, von Gruchalla C, Mönkemüller K. Endoscopic removal of a partial denture lodged in the jejunum, using single balloon enteroscopy. *Endoscopy* 2012; **44** Suppl 2 UCTN: E236-E237 [PMID: 22715012 DOI: 10.1055/s-0032-1308929]

55 **Chung CS**, Lin CK, Su KE, Liu CY, Lin CC, Liang CC, Lee TH. Diagnosis of Ancylostoma ceylanicum infestation by single-balloon enteroscopy (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **76**: 671-672 [PMID: 22795675 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.05.010]

56 **Aktas H**, Mensink PB, Kuipers EJ, van Buuren H. Single-balloon enteroscopy-assisted direct percutaneous endoscopic jejunostomy. *Endoscopy* 2012; **44**: 210-212 [PMID: 22271031 DOI: 10.1055/s-0031-1291442]

57 **Fukumoto A**, Manabe N, Tanaka S, Yamaguchi T, Matsumoto Y, Chayama K. Usefulness of EUS with double-balloon enteroscopy for diagnosis of small-bowel diseases. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2007; **65**: 412-420 [PMID: 17321241 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2006.08.045]

58 **Wada M**, Lefor AT, Mutoh H, Yano T, Hayashi Y, Sunada K, Nishimura N, Miura Y, Sato H, Shinhata H, Yamamoto H, Sugano K. Endoscopic ultrasound with double-balloon endoscopy in the evaluation of small-bowel disease. *Surg Endosc* 2014; **28**: 2428-2436 [PMID: 24619330 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-014-3493-y]

59 **Kawamura T**, Yasuda K, Uno K, Tanaka K, Nakajima M. Clinical Evaluation of Endoscopic Ultrasonography With Single-Balloon Enteroscopy for Diagnosis of Small Bowel Diseases. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2010; **71**: AB366-AB367 [DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.03.999]

P- Reviewer: Hu H, Sofi A, Sterpetti AV, Tepes B
S- Editor: Tian YL **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Zhang DN

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.66

World J Gastrointest Endosc 2015 January 16; 7(1): 66-72
ISSN 1948-5190 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Observational Study

Treatment of dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus in lower volume centres after structured training

Georgina Chadwick, Jack Faulkner, Robert Ley-Greaves, Panagiotis Vlavianos, Rob Goldin, Jonathan Hoare

Georgina Chadwick, Jack Faulkner, Robert Ley-Greaves, Panagiotis Vlavianos, Jonathan Hoare, Department of Gastroenterology, St Marys Hospital, W2 1NY London, United Kingdom
Rob Goldin, Department of Histopathology, St Marys Hospital, W2 1NY London, United Kingdom
Author contributions: Hoare J designed the study; Vlavianos P and Hoare J performed all the endoscopies, and collected all the specimens; Goldin R analysed all the specimens; Chadwick G, Faulkner J and Ley-Greaves R extracted all the results from the endoscopy database for analysis; Chadwick G wrote the manuscript with input from Faulkner J and Ley-Greaves R; the manuscript was critically reviewed and edited by Hoare J, Vlavianos P and Goldin R; all authors approved the final manuscript.
Ethics approval: The study was a retrospective observational study and as such did not require review and approval by the Institutional Review board.
Informed consent: The study was a retrospective observational study using routinely collected hospital data, and as such did not require informed consent.
Conflict-of-interest: The research received no specific grant from any funding agency, in the public, commercial, or not-for-profit services. Georgina Chadwick, Panagiotis Vlavianos, Rob Goldin and Jonathan Hoare are employees of imperial College NHS Trust.
Data sharing: No additional data available.

Correspondence to: Dr. Georgina Chadwick, Department of Gastroenterology, St Marys Hospital, Praed St, Paddington, W2 1NY London, United Kingdom. gchadwick@rcseng.ac.uk
Telephone: +44-020-78696630
Fax: +44-020-78696644
Received: August 28, 2014
Peer-review started: August 30, 2014
First decision: November 3, 2014
Revised: November 10, 2014
Accepted: December 16, 2014
Article in press: December 17, 2014
Published online: January 16, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To investigate whether dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus can be safely and effectively treated endoscopically in low volume centres after structured training.

METHODS: After attending a structured training program in Amsterdam on the endoscopic treatment of dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus, treatment of these patients was initiated at St Marys Hospital. This is a retrospective case series conducted at a United Kingdom teaching Hospital, of patients referred for endoscopic treatment of Barrett's oesophagus with high grade dysplasia or early cancer, who were diagnosed between January 2008 and February 2012. Data was collected on treatment provided (radiofrequency ablation and endoscopic resection), and success of treatment both at the end of treatment and at follow up. Rates of immediate and long term complications were assessed.

RESULTS: Thirty-two patients were referred to St Marys with high grade dysplasia or intramucosal cancer within a segment of Barrett's Oesophagus. Twenty-seven met the study inclusion criteria, 16 of these had a visible nodule at initial endoscopy. Treatment was given over a median of 5 mo, and patients received a median of 3 treatment sessions over this time. At the end of treatment dysplasia was successfully eradicated in 96% and intestinal metaplasia in 88%, on per protocol analysis. Patients were followed up for a median of 18 mo. At which time complete eradication of dysplasia was maintained in 86%. Complications were rare: 2 patients suffered from post-procedural

bleeding, 4 cases were complicated by oesophageal stenosis. Recurrence of cancer was seen in 1 case.

CONCLUSION: With structured training good outcomes can be achieved in low volume centres treating dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus.

Key words: Barrett's Oesophagus; Oesophageal cancer; Endoscopic treatment; Radiofrequency ablation; Endoscopic resection

Core tip: With structured training endoscopic treatment of dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus with endoscopic resection and radiofrequency ablation can be provided in lower volume centres with good safety and efficacy outcomes.

Chadwick G, Faulkner J, Ley-Greaves R, Vlavianos P, Goldin R, Hoare J. Treatment of dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus in lower volume centres after structured training. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; 7(1): 66-72 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5190/full/v7/i1/66.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.66

INTRODUCTION

Barrett's Oesophagus is a significant risk factor for oesophageal cancer[1], with studies suggesting it develops through a dysplasia-carcinoma sequence[2]. As it does the risk of progression to cancer increases from 0.1% per year for a non-dysplastic segment of Barrett's Oesophagus[3], to 5.6% per year if high grade dysplasia (HGD) is present[4].

United Kingdom guidelines recommend that Barrett's Oesophagus should be regularly surveyed, with prompt intervention if there is progression to HGD or cancer[5]. Until recently esophagectomy has been considered the treatment of choice, but this is associated with significant morbidity and mortality even in high volume centres[6]. Over recent years significant progress has been made in the endoscopic treatment of Barrett's Oesophagus with dysplastic changes. This has resulted in the most recent United Kingdom guidelines recommending endoscopic treatment of HGD in preference to oesophagectomy, given the lower treatment related morbidity[5].

Endoscopic treatment of dysplastic Barrett's oesophagus has two important stages. First, removal of any visible dysplastic lesions. This is usually achieved by endoscopic mucosal resection (EMR) of the lesion; this provides definitive staging information and ensures that lesions extending into the submucosa are not missed. Once this is done, it is recommended that any remaining segment of Barrett's Oesophagus is treated, this minimises the risk development of cancer in the future in the remaining Barrett's segment[7]. Two distinct approaches can be taken to do this, stepwise radical endoscopic resection (SRER) or ablation of the affected mucosa. Over the last five years radiofrequency ablation (RFA) has become the most widely used ablative technique. A recent systematic review demonstrated that while SRER and RFA have similar efficacy in treating dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus, RFA is associated with a significantly lower rate of complications[8]. Furthermore while SRER appears to be a relatively complex technique to learn[9], learning to perform RFA does not appear to be associated with such a significant learning curve[10]. Ablation is therefore generally accepted as the preferred treatment modality in Europe.

To date most of the studies looking at the endoscopic treatment of Barrett's Oesophagus have come from high volume research centres, with only one small retrospective study coming from a community hospital in the United States[11]. This study reported 100% success in eradication of dysplasia at follow up in 10 patients with HGD, suggesting that dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus can be managed successfully outside of large volume research centres. But larger studies performed outside high volume research centres are still needed.

Given the rapidly rising incidence of oesophageal cancer and Barrett's Oesophagus in the United Kingdom[12,13], several smaller centres have established treatment programs for dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus. Recognising this fact the Academic Medical Centre in Amsterdam (AMC) created a multidisciplinary European Training Program for the treatment of neoplasia within Barrett's Oesophagus[14]. The aim of this course was to improve the quality of detection and treatment of dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus in these lower volume centres.

This study aims to assess whether with the structured training, endoscopists with little experience in ablative techniques can be taught to manage dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus safely and effectively in lower volume centres.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study design and patient population

In 2008 a centre for the treatment of dysplastic Barrett's oesophagus was established at St Mary's, a United Kingdom teaching hospital and regional centre for upper gastro-intestinal surgery. Patients were included in this retrospective consecutive case series, if they were diagnosed with Barrett's Oesophagus with HGD or intramucosal cancer (IMC) between January 2008 and February 2012 and were referred to St Marys for endoscopic treatment.

All patients had their pre-treatment histological diagnosis confirmed by a specialist pathologist (RG), and were discussed at the local specialist multi-disciplinary team (MDT) meeting, to determine the most appropriate treatment course. Any further staging investigations including CT and EUS recommended by the MDT to rule out invasive cancer, were performed at this stage.

Patients were identified for inclusion in the study by searching the hospital's electronic endoscopy database (Ascribe), records were cross checked against pathology

records and MDT meeting reports to ensure no cases were missed. Patients were excluded from this study if there was evidence of sub-mucosal invasion on resection of any visible nodules, or if they were considered unfit for repeated therapeutic endoscopies.

Teaching program at the AMC

Prior to the commencement of the study period, a multi-disciplinary team from St Marys, consisting of an endoscopist (JH), a pathologist (RG) and an endoscopy nurse attended the European training program for Barrett's Oesophagus with neoplasia at the AMC. The course consisted of three two day workshops, these combined theoretical lectures, live demonstrations by experts and finally hands on supervised training sessions. The hands on sessions were staged, starting treatment on explanted pig tissue, before progressing to live pigs and then human cases. A variety of different endoscopic techniques were taught including EMR-cap, multiband mucosectomy and RFA.

Endoscopic procedures

All endoscopic procedures were performed by one of two experienced endoscopists (JH, PV) on an outpatient basis under conscious sedation. All procedures were performed using an Olympus H260Z series endoscope, with narrow band imaging and zoom features used at the operators discretion.

Visible areas of dysplasia were resected first, using the Duette™ Multiband Mucosectomy (Cook Medical, Winston-Salem, NC). Patients with evidence of sub-mucosal invasion on the resected specimen were referred back to the MDT, and excluded from the study at this stage. Remaining patients had a repeat endoscopy two months later, where a further resection was performed if required. Otherwise patients were considered for ablation of any residual Barrett's Oesophagus using RFA. Patients with dysplasia detected within a segment of flat Barrett's Oesophagus on initial endoscopy started treatment with RFA immediately.

RFA was performed using the HALO system (BARRX Medical, Sunnyvale, CA). Circumferential RFA (HALO^{360}) was usually applied first, using standard energy settings (12 J/cm^2, 40 W/cm^2). This was repeated after repositioning the balloon, until the entire Barrett's Oesophagus segment was ablated. The catheter was then removed, so debris could be scraped off the balloon and coagulum could be removed from the ablation zone. The process was then repeated, before ablating the segment a second time. If there was only a short segment of non-circumferential Barrett's Oesophagus present initially or on follow up procedures, focal ablation was applied using the HALO^{90} device. RFA was then delivered twice in quick succession to each area (12-15 J/cm^2, 40 W/cm^2), then the probe and the mucosa were cleaned, the area was then ablated again twice. In the interest of costs, argon plasma coagulation (APC) was used at the endoscopist's discretion to treat small islands (< 5 mm) of residual Barrett's Oesophagus. Patients received treatment at 2-3 monthly intervals until all visible Barrett's Oesophagus was eradicated.

At this stage treatment was considered complete and targeted biopsies were taken of any endoscopic abnormalities in the oesophagus, and quadrantic biopsies were taken from just distal (< 5 mm) to the neo-squamocolumnar junction (NSCJ).

Histological analysis

All histological specimens were analysed by a specialist gastrointestinal pathologist (RG), and if there was evidence of dysplasia the diagnosis was confirmed by a second pathologist. Biopsies were assessed using the revised Vienna classification[15].

Data collection

Data was collected retrospectively from endoscopy reports and pathology records, up to August 2013. Information was collected on patient demographics, length of the Barrett's Oesophagus segment treated, the number and type of procedures each patient had had, duration of follow up and complications related to the procedure. Histology records provided information on pre and post treatment histology.

Endpoints

The primary outcome assessed was success of complete eradication of dysplasia (CE-D) and intestinal metaplasia (CE-IM) after completion of treatment. This was defined as absence of any endoscopically visible Barrett's Oesophagus (confirmed on available oesophageal biopsies), combined with the absence of dysplasia on biopsies taken from just distal to the NSCJ.

Secondary endpoints: (1) Rate of CE-D/CE-IM at most recent follow-up endoscopy, more than 6 mo after completion of treatment. Follow-up duration was defined as the time between completion of treatment and the most recent follow up endoscopy; (2) Rates of short term complications, related to initial endoscopic procedure, *e.g.*, bleeding or perforation; and (3) Rates of long term complications associated with the endoscopic treatment, *e.g.*, oesophageal stenosis.

Results are presented on both a per protocol (PP) and an intention to treat (ITT) basis, for the primary outcome and complication rates. But follow up results are presented on intention to follow up basis, after excluding patients who did not complete endoscopic treatment (due to patient choice or failure of endoscopic treatment) and patients who had not completed 6 mo follow up.

Statistical analysis

The study did not use any biostatistics mathods.

RESULTS

Between January 2008 and February 2012, 32 patients were referred for endoscopic treatment of Barrett's Oesophagus with HGD or IMC.

Twenty-one of these patients had a nodule visible

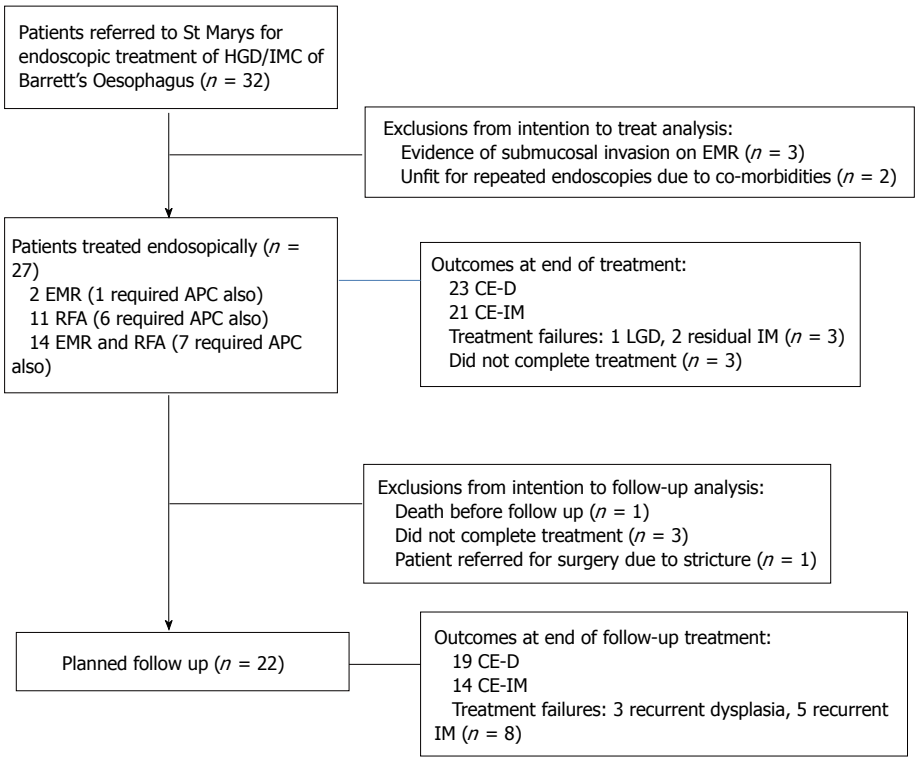


Figure 1 Selection of analysis cohort and outcomes. HGD: High grade dysplasia; LGD: Low grade dysplasia; IMC: Intramucosal cancer; APC: Argon plasma coagulation; EMR: Endoscopic mucosal resection; CE-D: Complete eradication of dysplasia; CE-IM: Intestinal metaplasia.

endoscopically at referral. Of these, 3 patients were found to have lesions extending deep into the submucosa, and an additional 2 patients were considered unfit for repeated endoscopic therapy due to severe co-morbidities. As a result these 5 patients were excluded from analysis.

This left 27 patients who met the inclusion criteria, and were considered for this study (Figure 1). Patient demographics are summarised in Table 1.

Treatment received

Patients received treatment over a median of 5 mo. During this time the median number of treatment sessions required was 3 (range 1-9). Where RFA was used, patients required a median of 1 focal and 1 circumferential ablation.

Sixteen patients (59%), including all those with a known diagnosis of IMC, had a nodule visible at initial endoscopy which was resected. Four of these patients required a further endoscopic resection, during the treatment period. Following successful endoscopic resection, 14 patients received additional treatment with RFA to treat the remaining Barrett's Oesophagus.

While 11 patients were found to have evidence of dysplasia within a flat segment Barrett's Oesophagus, they were treated with RFA alone as the primary therapy.

Following EMR and RFA, additional treatment with APC was needed in 14 patients, to treat small areas of residual Barrett's Oesophagus.

Primary outcomes

On an ITT basis CE-D at the end of treatment was achieved in 85% (23/27) CE-D, while 78% (21/27) achieved CE-IM. But 3 patients did not complete treatment as planned, so for the 24 patients who completed treatment as planned CE-D was achieved in 96% (23/24), with only 1 patient having evidence of residual low grade dysplasia (LGD). A further 2 patients who completed their planned treatment had evidence of visible non-dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus after completing treatment, so CE-IM was achieved in 88% (21/24) of the cohort on PP analysis.

One patient who did not complete planned treatment was lost to follow up, after failing to attend several appointments. He represented 2 years later with a T2 oesophageal cancer, this was treated with an oesophagectomy but he subsequently died. The other two patients were lost to follow up, despite multiple attempts to re-engage them.

Secondary outcomes

Follow up results: 22 patients were considered for analysis in the follow up cohort. The 5 patients who were dropped from this cohort included the 3 patients who had failed to complete treatment, 1 who died from pancreatic cancer before starting follow up and 1 patient was referred for surgery after endoscopic treatment failed and resulted in a severe stricture refractory to endoscopic dilatation. The median follow up duration was 18 mo (range 7-34 mo).

During follow up 3 patients had recurrence of dysplasia. One patient had recurrent IMC, this has been retreated endoscopically and the patient is awaiting follow up. One patient who had LGD at the end of treatment

Table 1 Patient demographics

Male: female	25:2
Median age (yr) (range)	66 (53-89)
Median length Barrett's (cm) (range)	5 (1-10)
Worst diagnosis on biopsy or ER specimen	9 IMC/18 HGD

HGD: High grade dysplasia; LGD: Low grade dysplasia; IMC: Intramucosal cancer.

progressed to HGD during follow up. This patient is now undergoing regular surveillance instead of further treatment, on account of their co-morbidities and wishes. The final patient who developed LGD during follow up is undergoing more intense surveillance, but has not received further treatment. So overall 19/22 (86%) patients achieved CE-D at the most recent follow up.

A further 5 patients had recurrence of visible non-dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus during follow up, so CE-IM was maintained in 14/22 (64%).

Complication rates

Overall 6 patients suffered from complications related to the procedure (22%). Two patients suffered acute bleeding post EMR, both were successfully treated endoscopically.

A further four (14.8%) patients developed oesophageal stenosis during follow up, all had had a prior EMR. This was treated successfully with endoscopic dilatation in three patients (two patients required a single dilatation, but one patient required three dilatations). The final patient, treated midway through the study, had five attempts at dilatation but the stricture was refractory to treatment, this patient was referred for an oesophagectomy which confirmed there was no evidence of residual disease.

There were no fatalities or oesophageal perforations related to treatment.

DISCUSSION

Given the high morbidity and mortality associated with oesophagectomy, endoscopic treatment for Barrett's Oesophagus with HGD or IMC is now considered the treatment of choice in most patients[5,16]. To date these treatments have been provided predominantly by high volume research centres. However, with the increasing prevalence of oesophageal cancer and Barrett's Oesophagus in Europe[12], an increasing number of lower volume treatment centres are being established. As a result the AMC in Amsterdam developed a specialised training program aimed at optimising the recognition and treatment of dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus in these centres. It is therefore important to establish whether similar outcomes, in terms of both treatment efficacy and complication rates, can be achieved in lower volume centres after attending such a program.

This retrospective case series started with the first case of dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus treated at our institution after attending the course, and demonstrates that EMR and RFA for dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus can be safely performed in lower volume institutions outside of a research setting.

Analysis of outcomes focused on the rates of eradication of dysplasia and intestinal metaplasia at the end of treatment and at follow up. For this analysis we considered presence of dysplasia on biopsies taken below the neo-squamocolumnar junction as evidence of treatment failure, because studies have suggested the risk of recurrence of dysplasia is highest in this area and may predict development of neoplasia[17,18]. But presence of intestinal metaplasia alone below the NSCJ was not considered significant, as the relevance of this finding is debatable. Morales *et al*[19] demonstrated the presence of intestinal metaplasia in routine biopsies taken from the cardia in 25% of a healthy population, suggesting the finding is not clinically relevant[19].

Overall treatment was very successful in patients who completed treatment as planned, with 100% success in eradication of HGD and IMC, 96% success in eradication of any dysplasia and 88% success in eradicating visible Barrett's Oesophagus. These results are comparable to previous studies, with prospective studies from large volume tertiary referral centres reporting between 81%-100% CE-D and 74%-100% CE-IM at the end of treatment[20-24].

One of the major drawbacks of studies to date has been the short follow up periods reported, between 14 and 22 mo[20-24]. This study provides a median follow up of 18 mo. Overall durability of eradication of dysplasia was good, with 86% of patients maintaining complete eradication of dysplasia at the end of treatment. Previous studies had reported 79%-100% CE-D at follow up[20-22,25,26].

Currently St Marys is a relatively low volume centre, with only 32 new patients considered for treatment during the 4 year study period (equating to less than 1 new patient per month). So our patient volumes are likely to be similar to those reported by centres involved in the United Kingdom HALO registry. This registry collected data from 216 patients recruited from 14 United Kingdom centres, and reported the following outcomes at the end of treatment: 83% CE-HGD, 76% CE-D and 50% CE-IM[27]. It is uncertain what initial training endoscopists had at each centre involved in this study. But our comparatively favourable results suggest that access to a specialised training program may have a beneficial impact on treatment outcomes, and allow lower volume centres to provide access to high quality endoscopic treatment for dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus.

Throughout this series there were no reported deaths or perforations, but two patients required endoscopic treatment for bleeding post EMR. A further four patients (14.8%) suffered late complications, due to oesophageal stenosis. Our overall rates of oesophageal stenosis was slightly higher than rates reported in previous studies (0%-14%)[20-23,26,28,29]. This can be explained by two factors,

firstly the relatively high proportion of patients (59%) who required EMR prior to use of RFA (it should be noted that all strictures in this study occurred in patients who had had a previous EMR) and secondly this series started with the first case treated by our endoscopists. Van Vilsteren *et al*[9] previously demonstrated that there is a significant learning curve associated with learning to perform oesophageal EMR, and noted that complication rates were highest for the first few therapeutic endoscopies performed[9].

In conclusion, this study demonstrates that following structured training good outcomes can be achieved in the endoscopic treatment of dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus in lower volume centres. While our rate of oesophageal stenosis was slightly higher than previously reported, it must be noted that these results represent the start of our learning curve. We therefore expect this rate to fall as the endoscopist's experience increases.

COMMENTS

Background

Barrett's Oesophagus is a pre-malignant condition which progresses through a dysplasia-carcinoma sequence. As it does the risk of progression to cancer increases rapidly. It is therefore important to treat patients with evidence of high grade dysplasia as they are at higher risk of developing oesophageal cancer. Until recently oesophagectomy has been the mainstay of treatment this is associated with significant risk, and therefore used predominantly in younger fitter patients. But recently newer endoscopic techniques have been developed with proven safety and efficacy in treating dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus.

Research frontiers

With the increasing incidence of Barrett's Oesophagus in the United Kingdom it is important to assess whether these endoscopic techniques can be used safely and effectively outside of research centres, where the majority of the current literature is derived.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Several large studies have already demonstrated the safety and efficacy of endoscopic resection and radiofrequency ablation in dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus (as summarised in a review by Chadwick *et al*). But these studies have come from high volume research centres. This is the first study to demonstrate that with structured training clinicians can achieve good outcomes in the endoscopic treatment of dysplastic Barrett's Oesophagus in low volume centres.

Applications

The results of this study suggest that with structured training, endoscopic treatment of dysplastic Barrett's can be used safely and effectively in lower volume hospitals.

Terminology

Barrett's Oesophagus: This is the replacement of the normal stratified epithelium lining of the lower oesophagus with columnar cells. This is important because it puts the person at increased risk of development of oesophageal cancer; Dysplasia: Refers to the development of abnormal epithelium, which in the case of Barrett's Oesophagus is at risk of progression to cancer; Intramucosal oesophageal cancer: Cancer affecting the very superficial layer of the oesophagus. This stage of cancer is at low risk of spreading to the regional lymph nodes and distant organs; Endoscopic Mucosal Resection: A procedure to remove cancerous or other abnormal tissues (lesions) using an endoscope which is passed down the oesophagus. Radiofrequency ablation is the use of high frequency current to destroy areas of abnormal tissue.

Peer review

This article is really very interesting.

REFERENCES

1 **Spechler SJ**, Robbins AH, Rubins HB, Vincent ME, Heeren T, Doos WG, Colton T, Schimmel EM. Adenocarcinoma and Barrett's esophagus. An overrated risk? *Gastroenterology* 1984; **87**: 927-933 [PMID: 6468881]

2 **Hameeteman W**, Tytgat GN, Houthoff HJ, van den Tweel JG. Barrett's esophagus: development of dysplasia and adenocarcinoma. *Gastroenterology* 1989; **96**: 1249-1256 [PMID: 2703113]

3 **Hvid-Jensen F**, Pedersen L, Drewes AM, Sørensen HT, Funch-Jensen P. Incidence of adenocarcinoma among patients with Barrett's esophagus. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **365**: 1375-1383 [PMID: 21995385 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1103042]

4 **Rastogi A**, Puli S, El-Serag HB, Bansal A, Wani S, Sharma P. Incidence of esophageal adenocarcinoma in patients with Barrett's esophagus and high-grade dysplasia: a meta-analysis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **67**: 394-398 [PMID: 18045592 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.07.019]

5 **Fitzgerald RC**, di Pietro M, Ragunath K, Ang Y, Kang JY, Watson P, Trudgill N, Patel P, Kaye PV, Sanders S, O'Donovan M, Bird-Lieberman E, Bhandari P, Jankowski JA, Attwood S, Parsons SL, Loft D, Lagergren J, Moayyedi P, Lyratzopoulos G, de Caestecker J. British Society of Gastroenterology guidelines on the diagnosis and management of Barrett's oesophagus. *Gut* 2014; **63**: 7-42 [PMID: 24165758 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2013-305372]

6 **Wouters MW**, Wijnhoven BP, Karim-Kos HE, Blaauwgeers HG, Stassen LP, Steup WH, Tilanus HW, Tollenaar RA. High-volume versus low-volume for esophageal resections for cancer: the essential role of case-mix adjustments based on clinical data. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2008; **15**: 80-87 [PMID: 18004627 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-007-9673-4]

7 **May A**, Gossner L, Pech O, Fritz A, Günter E, Mayer G, Müller H, Seitz G, Vieth M, Stolte M, Ell C. Local endoscopic therapy for intraepithelial high-grade neoplasia and early adenocarcinoma in Barrett's oesophagus: acute-phase and intermediate results of a new treatment approach. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2002; **14**: 1085-1091 [PMID: 12362099 DOI: 10.1097/00042737-200210000-00009]

8 **Chadwick G**, Groene O, Markar SR, Hoare J, Cromwell D, Hanna GB. Systematic review comparing radiofrequency ablation and complete endoscopic resection in treating dysplastic Barrett's esophagus: a critical assessment of histologic outcomes and adverse events. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2014; **79**: 718-731.e3 [PMID: 24462170 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2013.11.030]

9 **van Vilsteren FG**, Pouw RE, Herrero LA, Peters FP, Bisschops R, Houben M, Peters FT, Schenk BE, Weusten BL, Visser M, Ten Kate FJ, Fockens P, Schoon EJ, Bergman JJ. Learning to perform endoscopic resection of esophageal neoplasia is associated with significant complications even within a structured training program. *Endoscopy* 2012; **44**: 4-12 [PMID: 22109651 DOI: 10.1055/s-0031-1291384]

10 **Zemlyak AY**, Pacicco T, Mahmud EM, Tsirline VB, Belyansky I, Walters A, Heniford BT. Radiofrequency ablation offers a reliable surgical modality for the treatment of Barrett's esophagus with a minimal learning curve. *Am Surg* 2012; **78**: 774-778 [PMID: 22748537]

11 **Lyday WD**, Corbett FS, Kuperman DA, Kalvaria I, Mavrelis PG, Shughoury AB, Pruitt RE. Radiofrequency ablation of Barrett's esophagus: outcomes of 429 patients from a multicenter community practice registry. *Endoscopy* 2010; **42**: 272-278 [PMID: 20146164 DOI: 10.1055/s-0029-1243883]

12 **Alexandropoulou K**, van Vlymen J, Reid F, Poullis A, Kang JY. Temporal trends of Barrett's oesophagus and gastro-oesophageal reflux and related oesophageal cancer over a 10-year period in England and Wales and associated proton pump inhibitor and H2RA prescriptions: a GPRD study. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **25**: 15-21 [PMID: 23022985 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e3283595086]

13 Cancer Research UK Statistical Information. Oesophageal Cancer Statistics. [Accessed May 2013]. Available from: URL: http://www.cancerresearchuk.org/cancer-info/cancerstats/types/oesophagus

14 EMR and RFA Training program 2008. [Accessed July 2014].

Available from: URL: http://www.endosurgery.eu/html/homepage.htm

15 **Schlemper RJ**, Riddell RH, Kato Y, Borchard F, Cooper HS, Dawsey SM, Dixon MF, Fenoglio-Preiser CM, Fléjou JF, Geboes K, Hattori T, Hirota T, Itabashi M, Iwafuchi M, Iwashita A, Kim YI, Kirchner T, Klimpfinger M, Koike M, Lauwers GY, Lewin KJ, Oberhuber G, Offner F, Price AB, Rubio CA, Shimizu M, Shimoda T, Sipponen P, Solcia E, Stolte M, Watanabe H, Yamabe H. The Vienna classification of gastrointestinal epithelial neoplasia. *Gut* 2000; **47**: 251-255 [PMID: 10896917 DOI: 10.1136/gut.47.2.251]

16 **Bennett C**, Vakil N, Bergman J, Harrison R, Odze R, Vieth M, Sanders S, Gay L, Pech O, Longcroft-Wheaton G, Romero Y, Inadomi J, Tack J, Corley DA, Manner H, Green S, Al Dulaimi D, Ali H, Allum B, Anderson M, Curtis H, Falk G, Fennerty MB, Fullarton G, Krishnadath K, Meltzer SJ, Armstrong D, Ganz R, Cengia G, Going JJ, Goldblum J, Gordon C, Grabsch H, Haigh C, Hongo M, Johnston D, Forbes-Young R, Kay E, Kaye P, Lerut T, Lovat LB, Lundell L, Mairs P, Shimoda T, Spechler S, Sontag S, Malfertheiner P, Murray I, Nanji M, Poller D, Ragunath K, Regula J, Cestari R, Shepherd N, Singh R, Stein HJ, Talley NJ, Galmiche JP, Tham TC, Watson P, Yerian L, Rugge M, Rice TW, Hart J, Gittens S, Hewin D, Hochberger J, Kahrilas P, Preston S, Sampliner R, Sharma P, Stuart R, Wang K, Waxman I, Abley C, Loft D, Penman I, Shaheen NJ, Chak A, Davies G, Dunn L, Falck-Ytter Y, Decaestecker J, Bhandari P, Ell C, Griffin SM, Attwood S, Barr H, Allen J, Ferguson MK, Moayyedi P, Jankowski JA. Consensus statements for management of Barrett's dysplasia and early-stage esophageal adenocarcinoma, based on a Delphi process. *Gastroenterology* 2012; **143**: 336-346 [PMID: 22537613 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.04.032]

17 **Halsey KD**, Chang JW, Waldt A, Greenwald BD. Recurrent disease following endoscopic ablation of Barrett's high-grade dysplasia with spray cryotherapy. *Endoscopy* 2011; **43**: 844-848 [PMID: 21826629 DOI: 10.1055/s-0030-1256649]

18 **Chai NL**, Linghu EQ. Which is the optimal treatment for Barrett's esophagus with high grade dysplasia--ablation or complete endoscopic removal? *Endoscopy* 2012; **44**: 218; author reply 219 [PMID: 22271034 DOI: 10.1055/s-0030-1257104]

19 **Morales TG**, Sampliner RE, Bhattacharyya A. Intestinal metaplasia of the gastric cardia. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1997; **92**: 414-418 [PMID: 9068460]

20 **van Vilsteren FG**, Pouw RE, Seewald S, Alvarez Herrero L, Sondermeijer CM, Visser M, Ten Kate FJ, Yu Kim Teng KC, Soehendra N, Rösch T, Weusten BL, Bergman JJ. Stepwise radical endoscopic resection versus radiofrequency ablation for Barrett's oesophagus with high-grade dysplasia or early cancer: a multicentre randomised trial. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 765-773 [PMID: 21209124 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2010.229310]

21 **Pouw RE**, Wirths K, Eisendrath P, Sondermeijer CM, Ten Kate FJ, Fockens P, Devière J, Neuhaus H, Bergman JJ. Efficacy of radiofrequency ablation combined with endoscopic resection for barrett's esophagus with early neoplasia. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **8**: 23-29 [PMID: 19602454 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2009.07.003]

22 **Gondrie JJ**, Pouw RE, Sondermeijer CM, Peters FP, Curvers WL, Rosmolen WD, Krishnadath KK, Ten Kate F, Fockens P, Bergman JJ. Stepwise circumferential and focal ablation of Barrett's esophagus with high-grade dysplasia: results of the first prospective series of 11 patients. *Endoscopy* 2008; **40**: 359-369 [PMID: 18494131 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-995567]

23 **Gondrie JJ**, Pouw RE, Sondermeijer CM, Peters FP, Curvers WL, Rosmolen WD, Ten Kate F, Fockens P, Bergman JJ. Effective treatment of early Barrett's neoplasia with stepwise circumferential and focal ablation using the HALO system. *Endoscopy* 2008; **40**: 370-379 [PMID: 18494132 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-995589]

24 **Shaheen NJ**, Sharma P, Overholt BF, Wolfsen HC, Sampliner RE, Wang KK, Galanko JA, Bronner MP, Goldblum JR, Bennett AE, Jobe BA, Eisen GM, Fennerty MB, Hunter JG, Fleischer DE, Sharma VK, Hawes RH, Hoffman BJ, Rothstein RI, Gordon SR, Mashimo H, Chang KJ, Muthusamy VR, Edmundowicz SA, Spechler SJ, Siddiqui AA, Souza RF, Infantolino A, Falk GW, Kimmey MB, Madanick RD, Chak A, Lightdale CJ. Radiofrequency ablation in Barrett's esophagus with dysplasia. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 2277-2288 [PMID: 19474425 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0808145]

25 **Shaheen NJ**, Overholt BF, Sampliner RE, Wolfsen HC, Wang KK, Fleischer DE, Sharma VK, Eisen GM, Fennerty MB, Hunter JG, Bronner MP, Goldblum JR, Bennett AE, Mashimo H, Rothstein RI, Gordon SR, Edmundowicz SA, Madanick RD, Peery AF, Muthusamy VR, Chang KJ, Kimmey MB, Spechler SJ, Siddiqui AA, Souza RF, Infantolino A, Dumot JA, Falk GW, Galanko JA, Jobe BA, Hawes RH, Hoffman BJ, Sharma P, Chak A, Lightdale CJ. Durability of radiofrequency ablation in Barrett's esophagus with dysplasia. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **141**: 460-468 [PMID: 21679712 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.04.061]

26 **Sharma VK**, Jae Kim H, Das A, Wells CD, Nguyen CC, Fleischer DE. Circumferential and focal ablation of Barrett's esophagus containing dysplasia. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 310-317 [PMID: 19174783 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2008.142]

27 **Haidry RJ**, Dunn J, Banks M, Gupta A, Butt MA, Smart H, Bhandari P, Smith L-A, Willert R, Fullarton G, Di Pietro M, Penman I, Barr H, Gordon C, Patel P, Boger P, Kappor N, Mahon B, Burnell M, Novelli M, Lovat LB. PWE-028 HALO radiofrequency ablation for high grade dysplasia and early mucosal neoplasia arising in Barrett's oesophagus: interim results form the UK HALO radiofrequency ablation registry. *Gut* 2012; **61**(Suppl 2): A308 [DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-302514d.28]

28 **Kim HP**, Bulsiewicz WJ, Cotton CC, Dellon ES, Spacek MB, Chen X, Madanick RD, Pasricha S, Shaheen NJ. Focal endoscopic mucosal resection before radiofrequency ablation is equally effective and safe compared with radiofrequency ablation alone for the eradication of Barrett's esophagus with advanced neoplasia. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **76**: 733-739 [PMID: 22732872 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.04.459]

29 **Ganz RA**, Overholt BF, Sharma VK, Fleischer DE, Shaheen NJ, Lightdale CJ, Freeman SR, Pruitt RE, Urayama SM, Gress F, Pavey DA, Branch MS, Savides TJ, Chang KJ, Muthusamy VR, Bohorfoush AG, Pace SC, DeMeester SR, Eysselein VE, Panjehpour M, Triadafilopoulos G. Circumferential ablation of Barrett's esophagus that contains high-grade dysplasia: a U.S. Multicenter Registry. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 35-40 [PMID: 18355819 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.12.015]

P- Reviewer: Dhalla SS, Souza JLS **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Zhang DN

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.73

World J Gastrointest Endosc 2015 January 16; 7(1): 73-76
ISSN 1948-5190 (online)

CASE REPORT

Russell body duodenitis with immunoglobulin kappa light chain restriction

William R Munday, Lucy Harn Kapur, Mina Xu, Xuchen Zhang

William R Munday, Lucy Harn Kapur, Mina Xu, Xuchen Zhang, Department of Pathology, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, CT 06516, United States
Xuchen Zhang, Pathology and Laboratory Medicine Service, VA CT HealthCare System, West Haven, CT 06516, United States
Author contributions: Munday WR, Kapur LH and Zhang X contributed to the conception and design; Munday WR drafted and revised the manuscript; Zhang X and Xu M supervised and revised the manuscript.

Correspondence to: Xuchen Zhang, MD, PhD, Department of Pathology, VA CT HealthCare System and Yale University School of Medicine, 950 Campbell Ave, West Haven, CT 06516, United States. xuchen.zhang@yale.edu
Telephone: +1-203-9325711
Fax: +1-203-9374704
Received: August 11, 2014
Peer-review started: August 13, 2014
First decision: September 16, 2014
Revised: October 17, 2014
Accepted: October 31, 2014
Article in press: November 3, 2014
Published online: January 16, 2015

Abstract

Russell bodies are eosinophilic intracytoplasmic globules which are likely the result of disturbed secretion of immunoglobulins that accumulate within the plasma cell. Russell body collections have been identified within the stomach, known as Russell body gastritis. Similar lesions within the duodenum are referred to as Russell body duodenitis, which is rare. Several Russell body gastritis case reports are associated with *Helicobacter pylori*. However, the etiology of Russell body duodenitis remains unclear. Here we report the first case of Russell body duodenitis with immunoglobulin light chain restriction in a background of peptic duodenitis.

Key words: Russell body duodenitis; Russell bodies; Immunoglobulin

Core tip: Russell body duodenitis is rare and the etiology is unclear. We report a case of Russell body duodenitis with immunoglobulin light chain restriction in a background of peptic duodenitis.

Munday WR, Kapur LH, Xu M, Zhang X. Russell body duodenitis with immunoglobulin kappa light chain restriction. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2015; 7(1): 73-76 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5190/full/v7/i1/73.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4253/wjge.v7.i1.73

INTRODUCTION

Russell bodies are eosinophilic intracytoplasmic globules which were first described by Russell *et al*[1] in 1890. These globules are likely the result of disturbed secretion of immunoglobulins that accumulate within the plasma cell. Sixteen case reports have identified abundant collections of Russell bodies in the stomach, known as Russell body gastritis. Similarly, three cases have been reported to occur within the duodenum, with the first in 2011[2]. All three cases presented clinically with upper gastrointestinal symptoms with the subsequent identification of polytypic, Russell body containing plasma cells in the duodenum referred to as Russell body duodenitis[2-4]. Several of the Russell body gastritis case reports are

associated with *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*). However, the etiology of Russell body duodenitis remains unclear. Here we report the first case of asymptomatic Russell body duodenitis. Additionally, this is the first reported case showing immunoglobulin light chain restriction.

CASE REPORT

Clinical, endoscopic and pathologic findings

A 78-year-old female with a past medical history of congestive heart failure, atrial fibrillation, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and chronic renal injury, presented to hospital with shortness of breath and lower extremity edema. Past medical history was also significant for diabetes, and hypertension. Past surgical history included sigmoid resection for diverticulitis, rotator cuff repair, and carpal tunnel release. The patient denied alcohol use, and had a history of smoking over sixty pack-years. Upon admission for shortness of breath, the patient was treated with intravenous diuresis and her symptoms subsequently improved.

Further laboratory investigation revealed concomitant iron deficiency anemia and chart review showed progressive decline in hemoglobin over a nine-month period. There was no clinical or laboratory evidence to suggest monoclonal gammopathy.

Esophagogastroduodenoscopy and colonoscopy were performed to evaluate the source of anemia. The patient had no prior history of upper or lower gastrointestinal symptoms. Upper endoscopy revealed a few scattered gastric fundic sub-centimeter polyps, and prominent gastric antral folds without evidence of inflammation. In the duodenum, clusters of lobulated polyps (Figure 1A) were located in the duodenal bulb, with a normal appearing second portion of the duodenum. No ulceration was present. Colonoscopy revealed a three centimeter ulcerated, sessile mass at the distal ascending colon, concerning for malignancy.

Random stomach biopsies from the body and antrum showed normal morphology and no evidence of *H. pylori*. Duodenal biopsies of the lobulated polyps at the duodenal bulb showed numerous eosinophilic globules, or Russell bodies, as well as gastric surface foveolar metaplasia (Figure 1B). CD138 immunostain was positive in plasma cells containing Russell bodies (Figure 1C). Immunoglobulin kappa light chain immunostain showed a dark peripheral rim with light center staining pattern in the Russell bodies (Figure 1D) while lambda immunostain was negative (not shown). The surrounding plasma cells with mature morphology showed polytypic light chain staining pattern. IgH gene rearrangement was negative. Biopsies of the ulcerated, sessile distal colonic mass revealed invasive adenocarcinoma.

DISCUSSION

Russell bodies are eosinophilic inclusions located in the cytoplasm of plasma cells. While they are typically identified in the setting of several malignancies of hematopoietic origin, they can be seen in some reactive conditions as well. The plasma cells containing Russell bodies, referred to as Mott cells, are often found in the setting of plasma cell myeloma, MALT lymphoma, plasmacytoma, or lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma. Russell body gastritis is a rare reactive condition in which Russell bodies are found within the lamina propria of the gastric mucosa, and so far without a definitive association with *H. pylori* or malignancy.

Of the sixteen reported cases of Russell body gastritis, several identified monoclonality[5-7]. In these cases, there were no clinical and pathologic features of MALT lymphoma or significant plasma cell neoplasia[5]. One case did show lambda restricted Mott cells, positivity for *H. pylori*, and concomitant monoclonal gammopathy of undermined significance (MGUS); however, eradication of *H. pylori* caused the Russell body gastritis to subside while the paraproteinemia remained unaffected[7]. Thus, these cases of monoclonal Mott cell proliferations are either reactive in nature, or possibly, precursor proliferations to more significant conditions, such as MALT lymphoma or plasmacytoma.

Interestingly, the phenomenon of Russell body monoclonality in the presence of mature polytypic plasma cells, as in our case, has been observed before, although outside the gastrointestinal tract. In a biopsy of labial mucosa, Matthews *et al*[8] identified a patient with monoclonal Russell bodies restricted to IgG and kappa chains in a background of mature plasma cells. Of the twelve patients in their study, this was the only patient diagnosed with a significant medical pathology, namely, Sjogren's syndrome. B-cell clonality in Sjogren's syndrome has been hypothesized to alter the salivary or lacrimal gland microenvironment, enabling the progression to lymphoma[9]. Indeed, approximately 5% of patients with Sjogren's syndrome will develop lymphoma, an incidence 40 times that of the general population[10]. It could be postulated that monotypic Mott cells are similar to monoclonal B-cells in this setting, such that the finding indicates a transient or intermediate step between an inflammatory condition, such as Sjogren's syndrome, and the progression to malignancy, such as lymphoma.

Further evidence supporting monoclonal Mott cells as an intermediary between inflammatory conditions and malignancy comes from a rare case of gastric Mott cell tumor associated with *H. pylori*[11]. In this case, abundant monotypic IgG kappa Mott cells were found on gastric biopsy with features suggestive of MALT lymphoma[11]. Furthermore, Mott cells were found in regional lymph nodes[11]. It is possible that *H. pylori* gastritis, a chronic inflammatory condition, over time stimulated an intermediary monoclonal Mott cell proliferation that subsequently developed malignant transformation and lymph node involvement. Whatever the sequence of events, it may be inferred from this example that monotypic Mott cells harbor malignant potential.

To summarize, the present case shows a unique

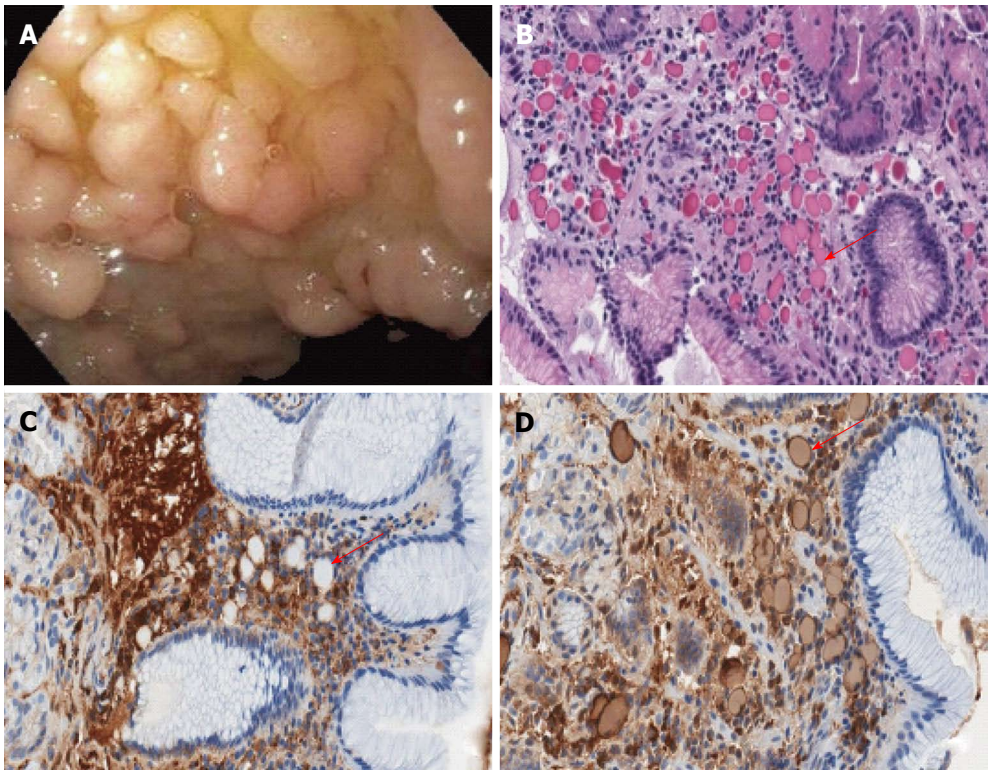


Figure 1 Endoscopic findings of duodenum. A: Endoscopic image shows a cluster of lobulated polyps in duodenal bulb; B: Numerous eosinophilic inclusions (Russell bodies, arrow) in the lamina propria and gastric foveolar metaplasia of the duodenal surface epithelium. H and E, 400 ×; C: CD138 immunohistochemistry highlights numerous mature plasma cells. The Russell bodies are round to ovoid clear spaces (arrow) within the lamina propria. Immunohistochemistry, 400 ×; D: Immunoglobulin kappa light chain immunohistochemistry shows a dark-rim staining and light internal staining pattern of Russell bodies (arrow). Immunohistochemistry, 400 ×.

type of Mott cell monoclonality for several reasons. First, the monoclonal Mott cells were located within the duodenum, of which this is the first reported case at this site. To date, only three cases of Russell body duodenitis have been reported, none of which demonstrate monoclonality[2-4]. Secondly, the monoclonal cells are present in a background of mature, polytypic plasma cells, a finding which is infrequently reported. Lastly, our patient was asymptomatic, the findings of Russell body duodenitis was incidental, and work up for *H. pylori* was negative. In this case, Russell body duodenitis likely originated from peptic duodenitis, indicated by gastric surface foveolar metaplasia of the overlying duodenal epithelium, and independent of *H. pylori*. Over time, chronic inflammation at this site may have caused Mott cells to accumulate, which subsequently progressed to monoclonality. It has been suggested that monoclonality of Mott cells may occur secondary to alternations at the immunoglobulin locus, and may be induced by chronic inflammation[7]. Given the low grade nature of MALT lymphomas in the stomach and duodenum, and the likelihood that monotypic Russell body duodenitis is either reactive or pre-malignant, treatment beyond eradication of *H. pylori* (if present) is likely unnecessary. Further investigation, and the accumulation of additional cases, will be necessary to better understand the clinical significance of monoclonal Russell body duodenitis.

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

The patient presented with shortness of breath and lower extremity edema. Further laboratory investigation revealed concomitant iron deficiency anemia.

Clinical diagnosis

Iron deficiency anemia.

Differential diagnosis

Cause of iron deficiency is unknown. Considering patient's age, the possibility of gastrointestinal blood loss due to ulcer or malignancy should be ruled out. Esophagogastroduodenoscopy and colonoscopy were performed to evaluate the source of anemia.

Endoscopic diagnosis

Gastric fundic polyps, duodenal polyps and a 3 cm ulcerated, sessile mass at the distal ascending colon.

Pathological diagnosis

Russell body duodenitis and colonic invasive adenocarcinoma.

Related reports

Three cases of polytypic Russell body duodenitis have been reported. Here we report the first case of Russell body duodenitis with immunoglobulin light chain restriction in a background of peptic duodenitis.

Experiences and lessons

Russell body duodenitis is uncommon and the etiology remains unclear. The monotypic Russell body duodenitis is either reactive or pre-malignant, treatment beyond eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* (if present) is likely unnecessary. Further investigation, and the accumulation of additional cases, will be necessary to better understand the clinical significance of monoclonal Russell body duodenitis.

Peer review

This is a case report of a rare disease (Russell body duodenitis) described to

occur in the duodenum first in 2011.

REFERENCES

1 **Russell W**. An Address on a Characteristic Organism of Cancer. *Br Med J* 1890; **2**: 1356-1360 [PMID: 20753194]
2 **Savage NM**, Fortson T, Schubert M, Chamberlain S, Lee J, Ramalingam P. Isolated Russell body duodenitis. *Dig Dis Sci* 2011; **56**: 2202-2204 [PMID: 21234686 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-010-1559-9]
3 **Paniz Mondolfi A**, Samuel M, Kikhney J, Moter A, Feldman D, Slova D, Filatov A, Theise N. Russell body duodenitis: a histopathological and molecular approach to a rare clinical entity. *Pathol Res Pract* 2012; **208**: 415-419 [PMID: 22673188 DOI: 10.1016/j.prp.2012.05.007]
4 **Chen D**, Thota P, Liu X. Isolated Russell Body Duodenitis with Concurrent Helicobacter Pylori Gastritis. *J Med Cases* 2013; **4**: 166-169 [DOI: 10.4021/jmc905w]
5 **Araki D**, Sudo Y, Imamura Y, Tsutsumi Y. Russell body gastritis showing IgM kappa-type monoclonality. *Pathol Int* 2013; **63**: 565-567 [PMID: 24274720 DOI: 10.1111/pin.12105]
6 **Coyne JD**, Azadeh B. Russell body gastritis: a case report. *Int J Surg Pathol* 2012; **20**: 69-70 [PMID: 21997595 DOI: 10.1177/1066896911416115]
7 **Wolkersdörfer GW**, Haase M, Morgner A, Baretton G, Miehlke S. Monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance and Russell body formation in Helicobacter pylori gastritis. *Helicobacter* 2006; **11**: 506-510 [PMID: 16961813 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2006.00443.x]
8 **Matthews JB**. The immunoglobulin nature of Russell bodies. *Br J Exp Pathol* 1983; **64**: 331-335 [PMID: 6411110]
9 **Guzmán LM**, Castillo D, Aguilera SO. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) detection of B cell clonality in Sjögren's syndrome patients: a diagnostic tool of clonal expansion. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2010; **161**: 57-64 [PMID: 20408860 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2010.04144.x]
10 **Quartuccio L**, Isola M, Baldini C, Priori R, Bartoloni Bocci E, Carubbi F, Maset M, Gregoraci G, Della Mea V, Salvin S, De Marchi G, Luciano N, Colafrancesco S, Alunno A, Giacomelli R, Gerli R, Valesini G, Bombardieri S, De Vita S. Biomarkers of lymphoma in Sjögren's syndrome and evaluation of the lymphoma risk in prelymphomatous conditions: results of a multicenter study. *J Autoimmun* 2014; **51**: 75-80 [PMID: 24231556 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaut.2013.10.002]
11 **Fujiyoshi Y**, Inagaki H, Tateyama H, Murase T, Eimoto T. Mott cell tumor of the stomach with Helicobacter pylori infection. *Pathol Int* 2001; **51**: 43-46 [PMID: 11148463]

P- Reviewer: Abu-Zidan F, De Re V **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Zhang DN

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com